



the high-performance real-time implementation  
of TCP/IP standards

# User Guide

## Version 5

**Express Logic**

858.613.6640

Toll Free 888.THREADX

FAX 858.521.4259

<http://www.expresslogic.com>

**©2002-2016 by Express Logic**

All rights reserved. This document and the associated NetX software are the sole property of Express Logic. Each contains proprietary information of Express Logic. Reproduction or duplication by any means of any portion of this document without the prior written consent of Express Logic is expressly forbidden.

Express Logic reserves the right to make changes to the specifications described herein at any time and without notice in order to improve design or reliability of NetX. The information in this document has been carefully checked for accuracy; however, Express Logic makes no warranty pertaining to the correctness of this document.

**Trademarks**

NetX, NetX Duo, Piconet, and UDP Fast Path are trademarks of Express Logic. ThreadX is a registered trademark of Express Logic. All other product and company names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

**Warranty Limitations**

Express Logic makes no warranty of any kind that the NetX products will meet the USER's requirements, or will operate in the manner specified by the USER, or that the operation of the NetX products will operate uninterrupted or error free, or that any defects that may exist in the NetX products will be corrected after the warranty period. Express Logic makes no warranties of any kind, either expressed or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, with respect to the NetX products. No oral or written information or advice given by Express Logic, its dealers, distributors, agents, or employees shall create any other warranty or in any way increase the scope of this warranty, and licensee may not rely on any such information or advice.

Part Number: 000-1009

Revision 5.9



# ***Contents***

---

## ***About This Guide 9***

- Guide Conventions 10
- NetX Data Types 11
- Customer Support Center 12

## ***1 Introduction to NetX 15***

- NetX Unique Features 16
- RFCs Supported by NetX 18
- Embedded Network Applications 19
- NetX Benefits 19

## ***2 Installation and Use of NetX 23***

- Host Considerations 24
- Target Considerations 25
- Product Distribution 25
- NetX Installation 26
- Using NetX 26
- Troubleshooting 27
- Configuration Options 28
- NetX Version ID 37

### **3 *Functional Components of NetX* 39**

- Execution Overview 42
- Protocol Layering 48
- Packet Pools 49
- IP Protocol 57
- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) in IP 69
- Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) in IP 75
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) 77
- Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) 80
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) 84
- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) 91

### **4 *Description of NetX Services* 107**

### **5 *NetX Network Drivers* 353**

- Driver Introduction 354
- Driver Entry 354
- Driver Requests 355
- Driver Output 371
- Driver Input 372
- Example RAM Ethernet Network Driver 374

***A NetX Services 377***

***B NetX Constants 387***

***C NetX Data Types 407***

***D BSD-Compatible Socket API 415***

***E ASCII Character Codes 419***

***Index 421***





# ***Figures***

---

<i>Figure 1</i>	<i>Protocol Layering 50</i>
<i>Figure 2</i>	<i>UDP Data Encapsulation 50</i>
<i>Figure 3</i>	<i>Packet Header and Packet Pool Layout 53</i>
<i>Figure 4</i>	<i>IP Address Structure 58</i>
<i>Figure 5</i>	<i>IP Header Format 60</i>
<i>Figure 6</i>	<i>ARP Packet Format 73</i>
<i>Figure 7</i>	<i>ICMP Ping Message 79</i>
<i>Figure 8</i>	<i>IGMP Report Message 83</i>
<i>Figure 9</i>	<i>UDP Header 85</i>
<i>Figure 10</i>	<i>TCP Header 92</i>
<i>Figure 11</i>	<i>States of the TCP State Machine 97</i>







# About This Guide

---

This guide contains comprehensive information about NetX, the high-performance network stack from Express Logic.

It is intended for embedded real-time software developers familiar with basic networking concepts, the ThreadX RTOS, and the C programming language.

## Organization

<b>Chapter 1</b>	Introduces NetX
<b>Chapter 2</b>	Gives the basic steps to install and use NetX with your ThreadX application.
<b>Chapter 3</b>	Provides a functional overview of the NetX system and basic information about the TCP/IP networking standards.
<b>Chapter 4</b>	Details the application's interface to NetX.
<b>Chapter 5</b>	Describes network drivers for NetX.
<b>Appendix A</b>	NetX Services
<b>Appendix B</b>	NetX Constants
<b>Appendix C</b>	NetX Data Types
<b>Appendix D</b>	BSD-Compatible Socket API

<b>Appendix E</b>	ASCII Chart
<b>Index</b>	Topic cross reference

## Guide Conventions

### *Italics*

Typeface denotes book titles, emphasizes important words, and indicates variables.

### **Boldface**

Typeface denotes file names, key words, and further emphasizes important words and variables.



Information symbols draw attention to important or additional information that could affect performance or function.



Warning symbols draw attention to situations that developers should avoid because they could cause fatal errors.

## NetX Data Types

In addition to the custom NetX control structure data types, there are several special data types that are used in NetX service call interfaces. These special data types map directly to data types of the underlying C compiler. This is done to ensure portability between different C compilers. The exact implementation is inherited from ThreadX and can be found in the ***tx\_port.h*** file included in the ThreadX distribution.

The following is a list of NetX service call data types and their associated meanings:

<b>UINT</b>	Basic unsigned integer. This type must support 32-bit unsigned data; however, it is mapped to the most convenient unsigned data type.
<b>ULONG</b>	Unsigned long type. This type must support 32-bit unsigned data.
<b>VOID</b>	Almost always equivalent to the compiler's void type.
<b>CHAR</b>	Most often a standard 8-bit character type.

Additional data types are used within the NetX source. They are located in either the ***tx\_port.h*** or ***nx\_port.h*** files.

## Customer Support Center

Support engineers	858.613.6640
Support fax	858.521.4259
Support email	support@expresslogic.com
Web page	<a href="http://www.expresslogic.com">http://www.expresslogic.com</a>

### Latest Product Information

Visit the Express Logic web site and select the “Support” menu option to find the latest online support information, including information about the latest NetX product releases.

### What We Need From You

To more efficiently resolve your support request, provide us with the following information in your email request:

1. A detailed description of the problem, including frequency of occurrence and whether it can be reliably reproduced.
2. A detailed description of any changes to the application and/or NetX that preceded the problem.
3. The contents of the **`_tx_version_id`** and **`_nx_version_id`** strings found in the **`tx_port.h`** and **`nx_port.h`** files of your distribution. These strings will provide us valuable information regarding your run-time environment.
4. The contents in RAM of the following ULONG variables:

**`_tx_build_options`**  
**`_nx_system_build_options1`**  
**`_nx_system_build_options2`**  
**`_nx_system_build_options3`**

**`_nx_system_build_options4`**  
**`_nx_system_build_options5`**

These variables will give us information on how your ThreadX and NetX libraries were built.

5. A trace buffer captured immediately after the problem was detected. This is accomplished by building the ThreadX and NetX libraries with **`TX_ENABLE_EVENT_TRACE`** and calling **`tx_trace_enable`** with the trace buffer information. Refer to the *TraceX User Guide* for details.

### **Where to Send Comments About This Guide**

The staff at Express Logic is always striving to provide you with better products. To help us achieve this goal, email any comments and suggestions to the Customer Support Center at

[support@expresslogic.com](mailto:support@expresslogic.com)

Please enter “NetX User Guide” in the subject line.



# *Introduction to NetX*

---

NetX is a high-performance real-time implementation of the TCP/IP standards designed exclusively for embedded ThreadX-based applications. This chapter contains an introduction to NetX and a description of its applications and benefits.

- NetX Unique Features 16
  - Piconet™ Architecture 16
  - Zero-copy Implementation 16
  - UDP Fast Path™ Technology 17
  - ANSI C Source Code 17
  - Not A Black Box 17
  - BSD-Compatible Socket API 18
- RFCs Supported by NetX 18
- Embedded Network Applications 19
  - Real-time Network Software 19
- NetX Benefits 19
  - Improved Responsiveness 19
  - Software Maintenance 20
  - Increased Throughput 20
  - Processor Isolation 20
  - Ease of Use 20
  - Improve Time to Market 20
- Protecting the Software Investment 21

## NetX Unique Features

Unlike other TCP/IP implementations, NetX is designed to be versatile—easily scaling from small micro-controller-based applications to those that use powerful RISC and DSP processors. This is in sharp contrast to public domain or other commercial implementations originally intended for workstation environments but then squeezed into embedded designs.

### **Piconet™ Architecture**

Underlying the superior scalability and performance of NetX is *Piconet*, a software architecture especially designed for embedded systems. Piconet architecture maximizes scalability by implementing NetX services as a C library. In this way, only those services actually used by the application are brought into the final runtime image. Hence, the actual size of NetX is completely determined by the application. For most applications, the instruction image requirements of NetX ranges between 5 KBytes and 30 KBytes in size.

NetX achieves superior network performance by layering internal component function calls only when it is absolutely necessary. In addition, much of NetX processing is done directly in-line, resulting in outstanding performance advantages over the workstation network software used in embedded designs in the past.

### **Zero-copy Implementation**

NetX provides a packet-based, zero-copy implementation of TCP/IP. Zero copy means that data in the application's packet buffer are never copied inside NetX. This greatly improves performance and frees up valuable processor cycles



to the application, which is extremely important in embedded applications.

## UDP Fast Path™ Technology

With *UDP Fast Path Technology*, NetX provides the fastest possible UDP processing. On the sending side, UDP processing—including the optional UDP checksum—is completely contained within the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send*** service. No additional function calls are made until the packet is ready to be sent via the internal NetX IP send routine. This routine is also flat (i.e., its function call nesting is minimal) so the packet is quickly dispatched to the application's network driver. When the UDP packet is received, the NetX packet-receive processing places the packet directly on the appropriate UDP socket's receive queue or gives it to the first thread suspended waiting for a receive packet from the UDP socket's receive queue. No additional ThreadX context switches are necessary.

## ANSI C Source Code

NetX is written completely in ANSI C and is portable immediately to virtually any processor architecture that has an ANSI C compiler and ThreadX support.

## Not A Black Box

Most distributions of NetX include the complete C source code. This eliminates the “black-box” problems that occur with many commercial network stacks. By using NetX, applications developers can see exactly what the network stack is doing—there are no mysteries!

Having the source code also allows for application-specific modifications. Although not recommended, it is certainly beneficial to have the ability to modify the network stack if it is required.

These features are especially comforting to developers accustomed to working with in-house or public domain network stacks. They expect to have source code and the ability to modify it. NetX is the ultimate network software for such developers.

### **BSD-Compatible Socket API**

For legacy applications, NetX also provides a BSD-compatible socket interface that makes calls to the high-performance NetX API underneath. This helps in migrating existing network application code to NetX.

## **RFCs Supported by NetX**

NetX support of RFCs describing basic network protocols includes but is not limited to the following network protocols. NetX follows all general recommendations and basic requirements within the constraints of a real-time operating system with small memory footprint and efficient execution.

---

<b>RFC</b>	<b>Description</b>
RFC 1112	Host Extensions for IP Multicasting (IGMPv1)
RFC 1122	Requirements for Internet Hosts - Communication Layers
RFC 2236	Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 2
RFC 768	User Datagram Protocol (UDP)
RFC 791	Internet Protocol (IP)
RFC 792	Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)
RFC 793	Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
RFC 826	Ethernet Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
RFC 903	Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)

## Embedded Network Applications

Embedded network applications are applications that need network access and execute on microprocessors hidden inside products such as cellular phones, communication equipment, automotive engines, laser printers, medical devices, and so forth. Such applications almost always have some memory and performance constraints. Another distinction of embedded network applications is that their software and hardware have a dedicated purpose.

### Real-time Network Software

Basically, network software that must perform its processing within an exact period of time is called *real-time network* software, and when time constraints are imposed on network applications, they are classified as real-time applications. Embedded network applications are almost always real-time because of their inherent interaction with the external world.

## NetX Benefits

The primary benefits of using NetX for embedded applications are high-speed Internet connectivity and very small memory requirements. NetX is also completely integrated with the high-performance, multitasking ThreadX real-time operating system.

### Improved Responsiveness

The high-performance NetX protocol stack enables embedded network applications to respond faster than ever before. This is especially important for embedded applications that either have a significant

volume of network traffic or stringent processing requirements on a single packet.

### **Software Maintenance**

Using NetX allows developers to easily partition the network aspects of their embedded application. This partitioning makes the entire development process easy and significantly enhances future software maintenance.

### **Increased Throughput**

NetX provides the highest-performance networking available, which is achieved by minimal packet processing overhead. This also enables increased throughput.

### **Processor Isolation**

NetX provides a robust, processor-independent interface between the application and the underlying processor and network hardware. This allows developers to concentrate on the network aspects of the application rather than spending extra time dealing with hardware issues directly affecting networking.

### **Ease of Use**

NetX is designed with the application developer in mind. The NetX architecture and service call interface are easy to understand. As a result, NetX developers can quickly use its advanced features.

### **Improve Time to Market**

The powerful features of NetX accelerate the software development process. NetX abstracts most processor and network hardware issues, thereby removing these concerns from a majority of application network-specific areas. This, coupled with the ease-of-use and advanced feature set, result in a faster time to market!

## **Protecting the Software Investment**

NetX is written exclusively in ANSI C and is fully integrated with the ThreadX real-time operating system. This means NetX applications are instantly portable to all ThreadX supported processors. Better still, a completely new processor architecture can be supported with ThreadX in a matter of weeks. As a result, using NetX ensures the application's migration path and protects the original development investment.



## *Installation and Use of NetX*

---

This chapter contains a description of various issues related to installation, setup, and use of the high-performance network stack NetX, including the following:

- Host Considerations 24
- Target Considerations 25
- Product Distribution 25
- NetX Installation 26
- Using NetX 26
- Troubleshooting 27
- Configuration Options 28
  - System Configuration Options 28
  - ARP Configuration Options 30
  - ICMP Configuration Options 31
  - IGMP Configuration Options 31
  - IP Configuration Options 31
  - Packet Configuration Options 32
  - RARP Configuration Options 33
  - TCP Configuration Options 33
  - UDP Configuration Options 37
- NetX Version ID 37

## Host Considerations

Embedded development is usually performed on Windows or Linux (Unix) host computers. After the application is compiled, linked, and the executable is generated on the host, it is downloaded to the target hardware for execution.

Usually the target download is done from within the development tool's debugger. After download, the debugger is responsible for providing target execution control (go, halt, breakpoint, etc.) as well as access to memory and processor registers.

Most development tool debuggers communicate with the target hardware via on-chip debug (OCD) connections such as JTAG (IEEE 1149.1) and Background Debug Mode (BDM). Debuggers also communicate with target hardware through In-Circuit Emulation (ICE) connections. Both OCD and ICE connections provide robust solutions with minimal intrusion on the target resident software.

As for resources used on the host, the source code for NetX is delivered in ASCII format and requires approximately 1 Mbytes of space on the host computer's hard disk.



*Review the supplied **readme\_netx.txt** file for additional host system considerations and options.*



## Target Considerations

NetX requires between 5 KBytes and 45 KBytes of Read-Only Memory (ROM) on the target. Another 1 to 5KBytes of the target's Random Access Memory (RAM) are required for the NetX thread stack and other global data structures.

In addition, NetX requires the use of two ThreadX timer objects and one ThreadX mutex object. These facilities are used for periodic processing needs and thread protection inside the NetX protocol stack.

## Product Distribution

The exact content of the distribution disk depends on the target processor, development tools, and the NetX package purchased. However, the following is a list of several important files that are common to most product distributions:

### **NetX\_Express\_Startup.pdf**

PDF that provides a simple, four-step procedure to get NetX running on a specific target processor/board and specific development tools.

### **readme\_netx.txt**

Text file containing specific information about the NetX port, including information about the target processor and the development tools.

### **nx\_api.h**

C header file containing all system equates, data structures, and service prototypes.

<b>nx_port.h</b>	C header file containing all development-tool and target-specific data definitions and structures.
<b>demo_netx.c</b>	C file containing a small demo application.
<b>nx.a (or nx.lib)</b>	Binary version of the NetX C library that is distributed with the <i>standard</i> package.

## NetX Installation

Installation of NetX is straightforward. Refer to the ***NetX\_Express\_Startup.pdf*** file and the ***readme\_netx.txt*** file for specific information on installing NetX for your specific environment.



*Be sure to back up the NetX distribution disk and store it in a safe location.*



*Application software needs access to the NetX library file (usually **nx.a** or **nx.lib**) and the C include files **nx\_api.h**, and **nx\_port.h**. This is accomplished either by setting the appropriate path for the development tools or by copying these files into the application development area.*

## Using NetX

Using NetX is easy. Basically, the application code must include **nx\_api.h** during compilation and link with the NetX library **nx.a** (or **nx.lib**).

The following are the four easy steps required to build a NetX application:

**Step 1:**

Include the ***nx\_api.h*** file in all application files that use NetX services or data structures.

**Step 2:**

Initialize the NetX system by calling ***nx\_system\_initialize*** from the ***tx\_application\_define*** function or an application thread.

**Step 3:**

Create an IP instance, enable the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), if necessary, and any sockets after ***nx\_system\_initialize*** is called.

**Step 4:**

Compile application source and link with the NetX runtime library ***nx.a*** (or ***nx.lib***). The resulting image can be downloaded to the target and executed!

## Troubleshooting

Each NetX port is delivered with one or more demonstrations that execute on an actual network or via a simulated network driver. It is always a good idea to get the demonstration system running first.



See the ***readme\_netx.txt*** file supplied with the distribution for more specific details regarding the demonstration system.

If the demonstration system does not run properly, perform the following operations to narrow the problem:

1. Determine how much of the demonstration is running.
2. Increase stack sizes in any new application threads.
3. Recompile the NetX library with the appropriate debug options listed in the configuration option section.

4. Examine the NX\_IP structure to see if packets are being sent or received.
5. Examine the default packet pool to see if there are available packets.
6. Ensure the network driver is supplying ARP and IP packets with its headers on 4-byte boundaries for applications requiring IP connectivity.
7. Temporarily bypass any recent changes to see if the problem disappears or changes. Such information should prove useful to Express Logic support engineers.

Follow the procedures outlined in the “What We Need From You” on page 12 to send the information gathered from the troubleshooting steps.

## Configuration Options

There are several configuration options when building the NetX library and the application using NetX. The configuration options can be defined in the application source, on the command line, or within the ***nx\_user.h*** include file, unless otherwise specified.



*Options defined in ***nx\_user.h*** are applied only if the application and NetX library are built with ***NX\_INCLUDE\_USER\_DEFINE\_FILE*** defined.*

Review the ***readme\_netx\_duo\_generic.txt*** file for additional options for your specific version of NetX. The following sections list the configuration options available in NetX.

### System Configuration Options

NX\_DEBUG

Defined, enables the optional print debug information available from the RAM Ethernet network driver.

NX_DEBUG_PACKET	Defined, enables the optional debug packet dumping available in the RAM Ethernet network driver.
NX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING	Defined, removes the basic NetX error checking API and improves performance. API return codes not affected by disabling error checking are listed in bold typeface in the API definition. This define is typically used after the application is debugged sufficiently and its use improves performance and decreases code size.
NX_DRIVER_DEFERRED_PROCESSING	Defined, enables deferred network driver packet handling. This allows the network driver to place a packet on the IP instance and have the real processing routine called from the NetX internal IP helper thread.
NX_ENABLE_EXTENDED_NOTIFY_SUPPORT	Defined, enables more callback hooks in the stack. These callback functions are used by the BSD wrapper layer. By default this option is not defined.
NX_ENABLE_SOURCE_ADDRESS_CHECK	Defined, enables the source address of incoming packet to be checked. By default this option is disabled.
NX_LITTLE_ENDIAN	Defined, performs the necessary byte swapping on little endian environments to ensure the protocol headers are in proper big endian format. Note the default is typically setup in <i><b>nx_port.h</b></i> .
NX_MAX_PHYSICAL_INTERFACES	Specifies the total number of physical network interfaces on the device. The default value is 1 and is defined in <i><b>nx_api.h</b></i> ; a device must have at least one physical interface. Note this does not include the loopback interface.
NX_PHYSICAL_HEADER	Specifies the size in bytes of the physical header of the frame. The default value is 16 (based on a typical 14-byte Ethernet frame aligned to 32-bit boundary) and is defined in <i><b>nx_api.h</b></i> . The application can override the default by defining the value before <i><b>nx_api.h</b></i> is included, such as in <i><b>nx_user.h</b></i> .

## ARP Configuration Options

### NX\_ARP\_DEFEND\_BY\_REPLY

Defined, allows NetX to defend its IP address by sending an ARP response.

### NX\_ARP\_DEFEND\_INTERVAL

Defines the interval, in seconds, the ARP module sends out the next defend packet in response to an incoming ARP message that indicates an address in conflict.

### NX\_ARP\_DISABLE\_AUTO\_ARP\_ENTRY

Renamed to ***NX\_DISABLE\_ARP\_AUTO\_ENTRY***. Although it is still being supported, new designs are encouraged to use ***NX\_DISABLE\_ARP\_AUTO\_ENTRY***.

### NX\_ARP\_EXPIRATION\_RATE

Specifies the number of seconds ARP entries remain valid. The default value of zero disables expiration or aging of ARP entries and is defined in ***nx\_api.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

### NX\_ARP\_MAC\_CHANGE\_NOTIFICATION\_ENABLE

Renamed to ***NX\_ENABLE\_ARP\_MAC\_CHANGE\_NOTIFICATION***. Although it is still being supported, new designs are encouraged to use ***NX\_ENABLE\_ARP\_MAC\_CHANGE\_NOTIFICATION***.

### NX\_ARP\_MAX\_QUEUE\_DEPTH

Specifies the maximum number of packets that can be queued while waiting for an ARP response. The default value is 4 and is defined in ***nx\_api.h***.

### NX\_ARP\_MAXIMUM\_RETRIES

Specifies the maximum number of ARP retries made without an ARP response. The default value is 18 and is defined in ***nx\_api.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

### NX\_ARP\_UPDATE\_RATE

Specifies the number of seconds between ARP retries. The default value is 10, which represents 10 seconds, and is defined in ***nx\_api.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

**NX\_DISABLE\_ARP\_AUTO\_ENTRY**

Defined, disables entering ARP request information in the ARP cache.

**NX\_DISABLE\_ARP\_INFO**

Defined, disables ARP information gathering.

**NX\_ENABLE\_ARP\_MAC\_CHANGE\_NOTIFICATION**

Defined, allows ARP to invoke a callback notify function on detecting the MAC address is updated.

## ICMP Configuration Options

**NX\_DISABLE\_ICMP\_INFO**

Defined, disables ICMP information gathering.

**NX\_DISABLE\_ICMP\_RX\_CHECKSUM**

Defined, disables both ICMP checksum computation on received ICMP packets. This option is useful when the network interface driver is able to verify the ICMP checksum, and the application does not use the IP fragmentation feature. By default this option is not defined.

**NX\_DISABLE\_ICMP\_TX\_CHECKSUM**

Defined, disables both ICMP checksum computation on transmitted ICMP packets. This option is useful where the network interface driver is able to compute the ICMP checksum, and the application does not use the IP fragmentation feature. By default this option is not defined.

## IGMP Configuration Options

**NX\_DISABLE\_IGMP\_INFO**

Defined, disables IGMP information gathering.

**NX\_DISABLE\_IGMPV2**

Defined, disables IGMPv2 support, and NetX supports IGMPv1 only. By default this option is not set and is defined in ***nx\_api.h***.

**NX\_MAX\_MULTICAST\_GROUPS**

Specifies the maximum number of multicast groups that can be joined. The default value is 7 and is defined in ***nx\_api.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

## IP Configuration Options

**NX\_DISABLE\_FRAGMENTATION**

Defined, disables IP fragmentation and reassembly logic.

<code>NX_DISABLE_IP_INFO</code>	Defined, disables IP information gathering.
<code>NX_DISABLE_IP_RX_CHECKSUM</code>	Defined, disables checksum logic on received IP packets. This is useful if the network device is able to verify the IP header checksum, and the application does not expect to use IP fragmentation.
<code>NX_DISABLE_IP_TX_CHECKSUM</code>	Defined, disables checksum logic on IP packets sent. This is useful in situations in which the underlying network device is capable of generating the IP header checksum, and the application does not expect to use IP fragmentation.
<code>NX_DISABLE_LOOPBACK_INTERFACE</code>	Defined, disables NetX support for the loopback interface.
<code>NX_DISABLE_RX_SIZE_CHECKING</code>	Defined, disables the size checking on received packets.
<code>NX_ENABLE_IP_STATIC_ROUTING</code>	Defined, enables IP static routing in which a destination address can be assigned a specific next hop address. By default IP static routing is disabled.
<code>NX_IP_PERIODIC_RATE</code>	Defined, specifies the number of ThreadX timer ticks in one second. The default value is derived from the ThreadX symbol <b><i>TX_TIMER_TICKS_PER_SECOND</i></b> , which by default is set to 100 (10ms timer). Applications shall exercise caution when modifying this value, as the rest of the NetX modules derive timing information from <b><i>NX_IP_PERIODIC_RATE</i></b> .
<code>NX_IP_ROUTING_TABLE_SIZE</code>	Defined, sets the maximum number of entries in the IP static routing table, which is a list of an outgoing interface and the next hop addresses for a given destination address. The default value is 8 and is defined in <b><i>nx_api.h</i></b> . This symbol is used only if <b><i>NX_ENABLE_IP_STATIC_ROUTING</i></b> is defined.

## Packet Configuration Options



**NX\_DISABLE\_PACKET\_INFO**

Defined, disables packet pool information gathering.

**NX\_PACKET\_HEADER\_PAD**

Defined, enables padding towards the end of the NX\_PACKET control block. The number of ULONG words to pad is defined by **NX\_PACKET\_HEADER\_PAD\_SIZE**.

**NX\_PACKET\_HEADER\_PAD\_SIZE**

Sets the number of ULONG words to be padded to the NX\_PACKET structure, allowing the packet payload area to start at the desired alignment. This feature is useful when receive buffer descriptors point directly into NX\_PACKET payload area, and the network interface receive logic or the cache operation logic expects the buffer starting address to meet certain alignment requirements. This value becomes valid only when **NX\_PACKET\_HEADER\_PAD** is defined.

## RARP Configuration Options

**NX\_DISABLE\_RARP\_INFO** Defined, disables RARP information gathering.

## TCP Configuration Options

**NX\_DISABLE\_RESET\_DISCONNECT**

Defined, disables the reset processing during disconnect when the timeout value supplied is specified as **NX\_NO\_WAIT**.

**NX\_DISABLE\_TCP\_INFO** Defined, disables TCP information gathering.

**NX\_DISABLE\_TCP\_RX\_CHECKSUM**

Defined, disables checksum logic on received TCP packets. This is only useful in situations in which the link-layer has reliable checksum or CRC processing, or the interface driver is able to verify TCP checksum in hardware.

**NX\_DISABLE\_TCP\_TX\_CHECKSUM**

Defined, disables checksum logic for sending TCP packets. This is only useful in situations in which the receiving network node has received TCP checksum logic disabled or

the underlying network driver is capable of generating TCP checksum.

#### `NX_ENABLE_TCP_KEEPAIVE`

Defined, enables the optional TCP keepalive timer. The default settings is not enabled.

#### `NX_ENABLE_TCP_MSS_CHECKING`

Defined, enables the verification of minimum peer MSS before accepting a TCP connection. To use this feature, the symbol **`NX_ENABLE_TCP_MSS_MINIMUM`** must be defined. By default, this option is not enabled.

#### `NX_ENABLE_TCP_WINDOW_SCALING`

Enables the window scaling option for TCP applications. If defined, window scaling option is negotiated during TCP connection phase, and the application is able to specify a window size larger than 64K. The default setting is not enabled (not defined).

#### `NX_MAX_LISTEN_REQUESTS`

Specifies the maximum number of server listen requests. The default value is 10 and is defined in **`nx_api.h`**. The application can override the default by defining the value before **`nx_api.h`** is included.

#### `NX_TCP_ACK EVERY_N_PACKETS`

Specifies the number of TCP packets to receive before sending an ACK. Note if **`NX_TCP_IMMEDIATE_ACK`** is enabled but **`NX_TCP_ACK EVERY_N_PACKETS`** is not, this value is automatically set to 1 for backward compatibility.

#### `NX_TCP_ACK_TIMER_RATE`

Specifies how the number of system ticks (`NX_IP_PERIODIC_RATE`) is divided to calculate the timer rate for the TCP delayed ACK processing. The default value is 5, which represents 200ms, and is defined in **`nx_tcp.h`**. The application can override the default by defining the value before **`nx_api.h`** is included.

#### `NX_TCP_ENABLE_KEEPAIVE`

Renamed to **`NX_ENABLE_TCP_KEEPAIVE`**. Although it is still being supported, new designs are encouraged to use **`NX_ENABLE_TCP_KEEPAIVE`**.

**NX\_TCP\_ENABLE\_WINDOW\_SCALING**

Renamed to ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_WINDOW\_SCALING***.

Although it is still being supported, new designs are encouraged to use ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_WINDOW\_SCALING***.

**NX\_TCP\_FAST\_TIMER\_RATE**

Specifies how the number of NetX internal ticks (NX\_IP\_PERIODIC\_RATE) is divided to calculate the fast TCP timer rate. The fast TCP timer is used to drive the various TCP timers, including the delayed ACK timer. The default value is 10, which represents 100ms assuming the ThreadX timer is running at 10ms. This value is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

**NX\_TCP\_IMMEDIATE\_ACK** Defined, enables the optional TCP immediate ACK response processing. Defining this symbol is equivalent to defining ***NX\_TCP\_ACK EVERY\_N\_PACKETS*** to be 1.

**NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_INITIAL**

Specifies the number of seconds of inactivity before the keepalive timer activates. The default value is 7200, which represents 2 hours, and is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

**NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_RETRIES**

Specifies how many keepalive retries are allowed before the connection is deemed broken. The default value is 10, which represents 10 retries, and is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

**NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_RETRY**

Specifies the number of seconds between retries of the keepalive timer assuming the other side of the connection is not responding. The default value is 75, which represents 75 seconds between retries, and is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

**NX\_TCP\_MAX\_OUT\_OF\_ORDER\_PACKETS**

Symbol that defines the maximum number of out-of-order TCP packets can be kept in the TCP socket receive queue. This symbol can be used to limit the number of packets queued in

the TCP receive socket, preventing the packet pool from being starved. By default this symbol is not defined, thus there is no limit on the number of out of order packets being queued in the TCP socket.

#### **NX\_TCP\_MAXIMUM\_RETRIES**

Specifies how many data transmit retries are allowed before the connection is deemed broken. The default value is 10, which represents 10 retries, and is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

#### **NX\_TCP\_MAXIMUM\_TX\_QUEUE**

Specifies the maximum depth of the TCP transmit queue before TCP send requests are suspended or rejected. The default value is 20, which means that a maximum of 20 packets can be in the transmit queue at any given time. Note packets stay in the transmit queue until an ACK that covers some or all of the packet data is received from the other side of the connection. This constant is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

#### **NX\_TCP\_MSS\_CHECKING\_ENABLED**

Renamed to ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_MSS\_CHECKING***. Although it is still being supported, new designs are encouraged to use ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_MSS\_CHECKING***.

#### **NX\_TCP\_MSS\_MINIMUM**

Symbol that defines the minimal MSS value NetX TCP module accepts. This feature is enabled by ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_MSS\_CHECK***.

#### **NX\_TCP\_RETRY\_SHIFT**

Specifies how the retransmit timeout period changes between retries. If this value is 0, the initial retransmit timeout is the same as subsequent retransmit timeouts. If this value is 1, each successive retransmit is twice as long. If this value is 2, each subsequent retransmit timeout is four times as long. The default value is 0 and is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

#### **NX\_TCP\_TRANSMIT\_TIMER\_RATE**

Specifies how the number of system ticks (***NX\_IP\_PERIODIC\_RATE***) is divided to calculate the timer

rate for the TCP transmit retry processing. The default value is 1, which represents 1 second, and is defined in ***nx\_tcp.h***. The application can override the default by defining the value before ***nx\_api.h*** is included.

## UDP Configuration Options

**NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_INFO** Defined, disables UDP information gathering.

**NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_RX\_CHECKSUM**

Defined, disables the UDP checksum computation on incoming UDP packets. This is useful if the network interface driver is able to verify UDP header checksum in hardware, and the application does not enable IP fragmentation logic.

**NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_TX\_CHECKSUM**

Defined, disables the UDP checksum computation on outgoing UDP packets. This is useful if the network interface driver is able to compute UDP header checksum and insert the value in the IP head before transmitting the data, and the application does not enable IP fragmentation logic.

## NetX Version ID

The current version of NetX is available to both the user and the application software during runtime. The programmer can find the NetX version in the ***readme\_netx\_generic.txt*** file. This file also contains a version history of the corresponding port. Application software can obtain the NetX version by examining the global string ***\_nx\_version\_id*** in ***nx\_port.h***.

Application software can also obtain release information from the constants shown below defined in ***nx\_api.h***.

These constants identify the current product release by name and the product major and minor version.

```
#define __PRODUCT_NETX__  
#define __NETX_MAJOR_VERSION__  
#define __NETX_MINOR_VERSION__
```



# ***Functional Components of NetX***

---

This chapter contains a description of the high-performance NetX TCP/IP stack from a functional perspective.

- Execution Overview 42
  - Initialization 42
  - Application Interface Calls 43
  - Internal IP Thread 44
  - IP Periodic Timers 45
  - Network Driver 45
  - Multihome Support 46
  - Loopback Interface 48
  - Interface Control Blocks 48
- Protocol Layering 48
- Packet Pools 49
  - Packet Pool Memory Area 52
  - Creating Packet Pools 52
  - Packet Header NX\_PACKET 52
  - Packet Header Offsets 55
  - Pool Capacity 56
  - Thread Suspension 56
  - Pool Statistics and Errors 56
  - Packet Pool Control Block NX\_PACKET\_POOL 57
- IP Protocol 57
  - IP Addresses 58
  - IP Gateway Address 59
  - IP Header 60
  - Creating IP Instances 62
  - IP Send 63
  - IP Receive 64
  - Raw IP Send 65
  - Raw IP Receive 65
  - Default Packet Pool 66
  - IP Helper Thread 66

- Thread Suspension 66
- IP Statistics and Errors 67
- IP Control Block NX\_IP 67
- Static IP Routing 67
- IP Fragmentation 68
- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) in IP 69
  - ARP Enable 69
  - ARP Cache 70
  - ARP Dynamic Entries 70
  - ARP Static Entries 70
  - Automatic ARP Entry 71
  - ARP Messages 71
  - ARP Aging 74
  - ARP Defend 74
  - ARP Statistics and Errors 74
- Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) in IP 75
  - RARP Enable 75
  - RARP Request 76
  - RARP Reply 76
  - RARP Statistics and Errors 77
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) 77
  - ICMP Statistics and Errors 78
  - ICMP Enable 78
  - ICMP Echo Request 78
  - ICMP Echo Response 80
- Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) 80
  - IGMP Enable 81
  - Multicast IP Addressing 81
  - Physical Address Mapping in IP 81
  - Multicast Group Join 81
  - Multicast Group Leave 82
  - Multicast Loopback 82
  - IGMP Report Message 82
  - IGMP Statistics and Errors 84
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) 84
  - UDP Header 85
  - UDP Enable 86
  - UDP Socket Create 86
  - UDP Checksum 86



- UDP Ports and Binding 87
- UDP Fast Path™ 87
- UDP Packet Send 88
- UDP Packet Receive 89
- UDP Receive Notify 89
- Peer Address and Port 89
- Thread Suspension 90
- UDP Socket Statistics and Errors 90
- UDP Socket Control Block NX\_UDP\_SOCKET 91
- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) 91
  - TCP Header 91
  - TCP Enable 94
  - TCP Socket Create 94
  - TCP Checksum 94
  - TCP Port 95
  - Client-Server Model 95
  - TCP Socket State Machine 96
  - TCP Client Connection 96
  - TCP Client Disconnection 96
  - TCP Server Connection 99
  - TCP Server Disconnection 100
  - MSS Validation 101
  - Stop Listening on a Server Port 102
  - TCP Window Size 102
  - TCP Packet Send 102
  - TCP Packet Retransmit 103
  - TCP Keepalive 103
  - TCP Packet Receive 104
  - TCP Receive Notify 104
  - Thread Suspension 104
  - TCP Socket Statistics and Errors 105
- TCP Socket Control Block NX\_TCP\_SOCKET 106

## Execution Overview

There are five types of program execution within a NetX application: initialization, application interface calls, internal IP thread, IP periodic timers, and the network driver.



*NetX assumes the existence of ThreadX and depends on its thread execution, suspension, periodic timers, and mutual exclusion facilities.*

### Initialization

The service ***nx\_system\_initialize*** must be called before any other NetX service is called. System initialization can be called either from the ThreadX ***tx\_application\_define*** routine or from application threads.

After ***nx\_system\_initialize*** returns, the system is ready to create packet pools and IP instances. Because creating an IP instance requires a default packet pool, at least one NetX packet pool must exist prior to creating an IP instance. Creating packet pools and IP instances are allowed from the ThreadX initialization function ***tx\_application\_define*** and from application threads.

Internally, creating an IP instance is accomplished in two parts: The first part is done within the context of the caller, either from ***tx\_application\_define*** or from an application thread's context. This includes setting up the IP data structure and creating various IP resources, including the internal IP thread. The second part is performed during the initial execution from the internal IP thread. This is where the network driver, supplied during the first part of IP creation, is first called. Calling the network driver from the internal IP thread enables the driver to perform I/O and suspend during its initialization processing. When the network driver returns from its initialization processing, the IP creation is complete.



The NetX service ***nx\_ip\_status\_check*** is available to obtain information on the IP instance and its primary interface status. Such status information includes whether or not the link is initialized, enabled and IP address is resolved. This information is used to synchronize application threads needing to use a newly created IP instance. For multihome systems, see “Multihome Support” on page 46.

***nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check*** is available to obtain information on the specified interface.

## Application Interface Calls

Calls from the application are largely made from application threads running under the ThreadX RTOS. However, some initialization, create, and enable services may be called from ***tx\_application\_define***. The “Allowed From” sections in Chapter 4 indicate from which each NetX service can be called.

For the most part, processing intensive activities such as computing checksums is done within the calling thread's context—without blocking access of other threads to the IP instance. For example, on transmission, the UDP checksum calculation is performed inside the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send*** service, prior to calling the underlying IP send function. On a received packet, the UDP checksum is calculated in the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_receive*** service, executed in the context of the application thread. This helps prevent stalling network requests of higher-priority threads because of processing intensive checksum computation in lower-priority threads.

Values, such as IP addresses and port numbers, are passed to APIs in host byte order. Internally these values are stored in host byte order as well. This allows developers to easily view the values via a debugger. When these values are programmed into a

frame for transmission, they are converted to network byte order.

## Internal IP Thread

As mentioned, each IP instance in NetX has its own thread. The priority and stack size of the internal IP thread is defined in the ***nx\_ip\_create*** service. The internal IP thread is created in a ready-to-execute mode. If the IP thread has a higher priority than the calling thread, preemption may occur inside the IP create call.

The entry point of the internal IP thread is at the internal function ***\_nx\_ip\_thread\_entry***. When started, the internal IP thread first completes network driver initialization, which consists of making three calls to the application-specific network driver. The first call is to attach the network driver to the IP instance, followed by an initialization call, which allows the network driver to go through the initialization process. After the network driver returns from initialization (it may suspend while waiting for the hardware to be properly set up), the internal IP thread calls the network driver again to enable the link. After the network driver returns from the link enable call, the internal IP thread enters a forever loop checking for various events that need processing for this IP instance. Events processed in this loop include deferred IP packet reception, IP packet fragment assembly, ICMP ping processing, IGMP processing, TCP packet queue processing, TCP periodic processing, IP fragment assembly timeouts, and IGMP periodic processing. Events also include address resolution activities: ARP packet processing and ARP periodic processing in the IP network.



*The NetX callback functions, including listen and disconnect callbacks, are called from the internal IP thread—not the original calling thread. The*

*application must take care not to suspend inside any NetX callback function.*

## IP Periodic Timers

There are two ThreadX periodic timers used for each IP instance. The first one is a one-second timer for ARP, IGMP, TCP timeout, and it also drives IP fragment reassemble processing. The second timer is a 100ms timer to drive the TCP retransmission timeout.

## Network Driver

Each IP instance in NetX has a primary interface, which is identified by its device driver specified in the ***nx\_ip\_create*** service. The network driver is responsible for handling various NetX requests, including packet transmission, packet reception, and requests for status and control.

For a multi-home system, the IP instance has multiple interfaces, each with an associated network driver that performs these tasks for the respective interface.

The network driver must also handle asynchronous events occurring on the media. Asynchronous events from the media include packet reception, packet transmission completion, and status changes. NetX provides the network driver with several access functions to handle various events. These functions are designed to be called from the interrupt service routine portion of the network driver. For IP networks, the network driver should forward all ARP packets received to the ***\_nx\_arp\_packet\_deferred\_receive*** internal function. All RARP packets should be forwarded to ***\_nx\_rarp\_packet\_deferred\_receive*** internal function. There are two options for IP packets. If fast dispatch of IP packets is required, incoming IP packets should be forwarded to ***\_nx\_ip\_packet\_receive*** for immediate processing.

This greatly improves NetX performance in handling IP packets. Otherwise, forwarding IP packets to **`_nx_ip_packet_deferred_receive`** should be done. This service places the IP packet in the deferred processing queue where it is then handled by the internal IP thread, which results in the least amount of ISR processing time.

The network driver can also defer interrupt processing to run out of the context of the IP thread. In this mode, the ISR shall save the necessary information, call the internal function **`_nx_ip_driver_deferred_processing`**, and acknowledge the interrupt controller. This service notifies IP thread to schedule a callback to the device driver to complete the process of the event that causes the interrupt.

Some network controllers are capable of performing TCP/IP header checksum computation and validation in hardware, without taking up valuable CPU resources. To take advantage of the hardware capability feature, NetX provides options to enable or disable various software checksum computation at compilation time, as well as turning on or off checksum computation at run time. See “NetX Network Drivers” on page 353 for more detailed information on writing NetX network drivers.

## Multihome Support

NetX supports systems connected to multiple physical devices using a single IP instance. Each physical interface is assigned to an interface control block in the IP instance. Applications wishing to use a multihome system must define the value for **`NX_MAX_PHYSICAL_INTERFACES`** to the number of physical devices attached to the system, and rebuild NetX library. By default

***NX\_MAX\_PHYSICAL\_INTERFACES*** is set to one, creating one interface control block in the IP instance.

The NetX application creates a single IP instance for the primary device using the ***nx\_ip\_create*** service. For each additional network devices, the application attaches the device to the IP instance using the ***nx\_ip\_interface\_attach*** service.

Each network interface structure contains a subset of network information about the network interface that is contained in the IP control block, including interface IP address, subnet mask, IP MTU size, and MAC-layer address information.




*NetX with multihome support is backward compatible with earlier versions of NetX. Services that do not take explicit interface information default to the primary network device.*

The primary interface has index zero in the IP instance list. Each subsequent device attached to the IP instance is assigned the next index.

All upper layer protocol services for which the IP instance is enabled, including TCP, UDP, ICMP, and IGMP, are available to all the attached devices.

In most cases, NetX can determine the best source address to use when transmitting a packet. The source address selection is based on the destination address. NetX services are added to allow applications to specify a specific source address to use, in cases where the most suitable one cannot be determined by the destination address. An example would be in a multihome system, an application needs to send a packet to an IP broadcast or multicast destination addresses.

Services specifically for developing multihome applications include the following:



```
nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join  
nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command  
nx_ip_interface_address_get  
nx_ip_interface_address_set  
nx_ip_interface_attach  
nx_ip_interface_info_get  
nx_ip_interface_status_check  
nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send  
nx_udp_socket_interface_send
```

These services are explained in greater detail in “Description of NetX Services” on page 107.

## Loopback Interface

The loopback interface is a special network interface without an physical link attached to. The loopback interface allows applications to communicate using the IP loopback address 127.0.0.1

To utilize a logical loopback interface, ensure the configurable option

***NX\_DISABLE\_LOOPBACK\_INTERFACE*** is not set.

## Interface Control Blocks

The number of interface control blocks in the IP instance is the number of physical interfaces (defined by ***NX\_MAX\_PHYSICAL\_INTERFACES***) plus the loopback interface if it is enabled. The total number of interfaces is defined in ***NX\_MAX\_IP\_INTERFACES***.

# Protocol Layering

The TCP/IP implemented by NetX is a layered protocol, which means more complex protocols are built on top of simpler underlying protocols. In TCP/IP, the lowest layer protocol is at the *link level* and is handled by the network driver. This level is typically



targeted towards Ethernet, but it could also be fiber, serial, or virtually any physical media.

On top of the link layer is the *network layer*. In TCP/IP, this is the IP, which is basically responsible for sending and receiving simple packets—in a best-effort manner—across the network. Management-type protocols like ICMP and IGMP are typically also categorized as network layers, even though they rely on IP for sending and receiving.

The *transport layer* rests on top of the network layer. This layer is responsible for managing the flow of data between hosts on the network. There are two types of transport services supported by NetX: UDP and TCP. UDP services provide best-effort sending and receiving of data between two hosts in a connectionless manner, while TCP provides reliable connection-oriented service between two host entities.

This layering is reflected in the actual network data packets. Each layer in TCP/IP contains a block of information called a header. This technique of surrounding data (and possibly protocol information) with a header is typically called data encapsulation. Figure 1 shows an example of NetX layering and Figure 2 shows the resulting data encapsulation for UDP data being sent.

## Packet Pools

Allocating packets in a fast and deterministic manner is always a challenge in real-time networking applications. With this in mind, NetX provides the ability to create and manage multiple pools of fixed-size network packets.

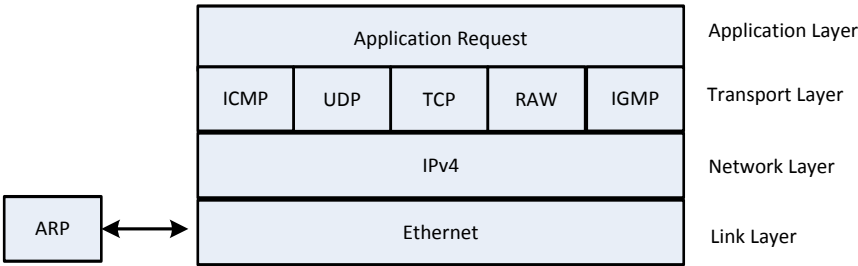


FIGURE 1. Protocol Layering

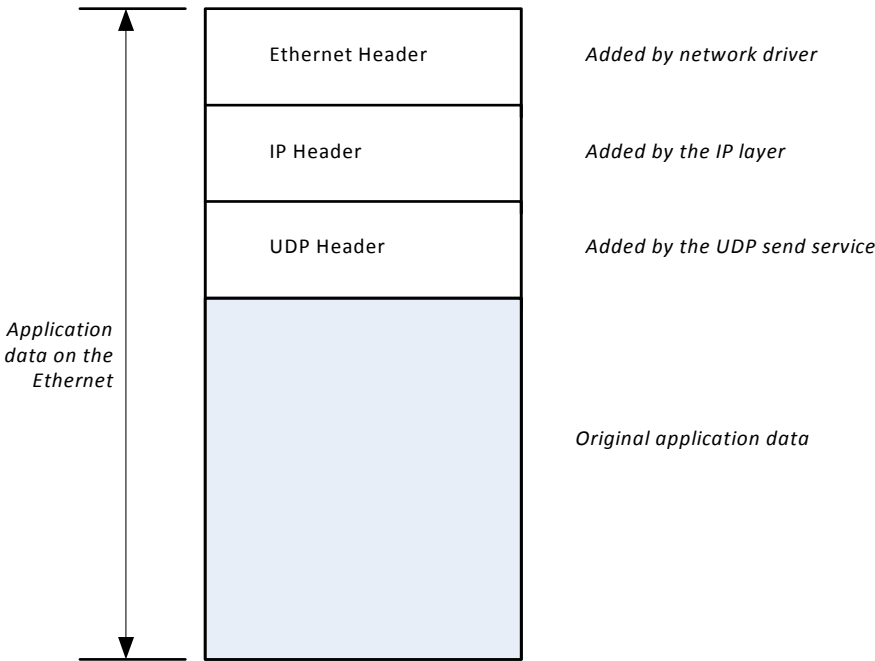


FIGURE 2. UDP Data Encapsulation

Because NetX packet pools consist of fixed-size memory blocks, there are never any internal fragmentation problems. Of course, fragmentation causes behavior that is inherently nondeterministic. In addition, the time required to allocate and free a NetX packet amounts to simple linked-list manipulation. Furthermore, packet allocation and deallocation is done at the head of the available list. This provides the fastest possible linked list processing.

Lack of flexibility is typically the main drawback of fixed-size packet pools. Determining the optimal packet payload size that also handles the worst-case incoming packet is a difficult task. NetX packets address this problem with an optional feature called packet chaining. An actual network packet can be made of one or more NetX packets linked together. In addition, the packet header maintains a pointer to the top of the packet. As additional protocols are added, this pointer is simply moved backwards and the new header is written directly in front of the data. Without the flexible packet technology, the stack would have to allocate another buffer and copy the data into a new buffer with the new header, which is processing intensive.

Since each packet payload size is fixed for a given packet pool, application data larger than the payload size would require multiple packets chained together. When filling a packet with user data, the application shall use the service ***`nx_packet_data_append`***. This service moves application data into a packet. In situations where a packet is not enough to hold user data, additional packets are allocated to store user data. To use packet chaining, the driver must be able to receive into or transmit from chained packets.

Each NetX packet memory pool is a public resource. NetX places no constraints on how packet pools are used.

## Packet Pool Memory Area

The memory area for the packet pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas for ThreadX and NetX objects, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it gives the application. For example, suppose that a communication product has a high-speed memory area for network buffers. This memory area is easily utilized by making it into a NetX packet memory pool.

## Creating Packet Pools

Packet pools are created either during initialization or during runtime by application threads. There are no limits on the number of packet memory pools in a NetX application.

## Packet Header NX\_PACKET

By default, NetX places the packet header immediately before the packet payload area. The packet memory pool is basically a series of packets—headers followed immediately by the packet payload. The packet header (***NX\_PACKET***) and the layout of the packet pool are pictured in Figure 3.

For network devices driver that are able to perform zero copy operations, typically the starting address of the packet payload area is programmed into the DMA logic. Certain DMA engines have alignment requirement on the payload area.



*It is important for the network driver to use the ***nx\_packet\_transmit\_release*** function when transmission of a packet is complete. This function checks to make sure the packet is not part of a TCP output queue before it is actually placed back in the available pool.*

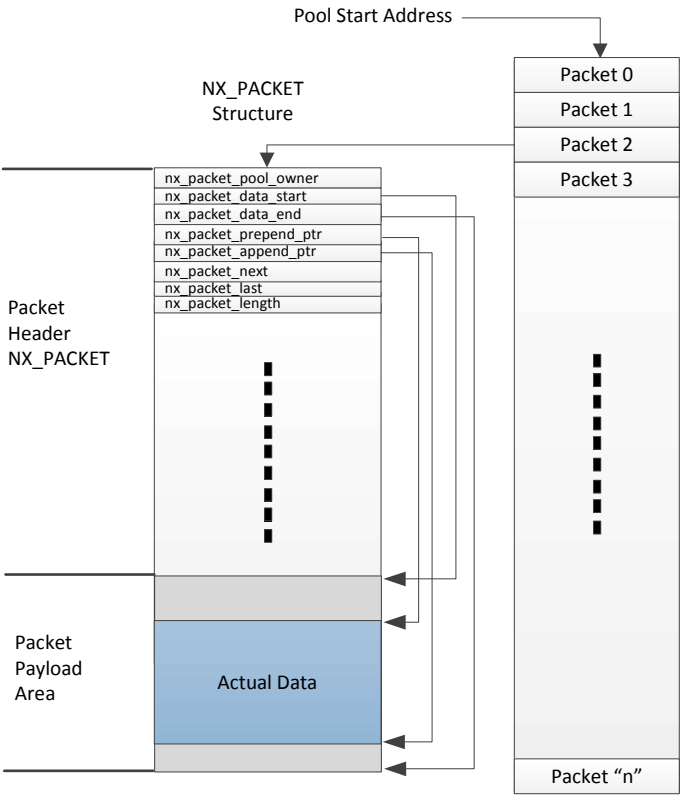


FIGURE 3. Packet Header and Packet Pool Layout

The fields of the packet header are defined as follows. Note that this table is not a comprehensive list of all the members in the *NX\_PACKET* structure.

#### Packet header

***nx\_packet\_pool\_owner***

#### Purpose

This field points to the packet pool that owns this particular packet. When the packet is released, it is released to this particular pool. With the pool ownership inside each packet, it is possible for a datagram to span multiple packets from multiple packet pools.

***nx\_packet\_next***

This field points to the next packet within the same frame. If NULL, there are no additional packets that are part of the frame.

***nx\_packet\_last***

This field points to the last packet within the same network packet. If NULL, this packet represents the entire network packet.

***nx\_packet\_length***

This field contains the total number of bytes in the entire network packet, including the total of all bytes in all packets chained together by the *nx\_packet\_next* member.

***nx\_packet\_ip\_interface***

This field is the interface control block which is assigned to the packet when it is received by the interface driver, and by NetX for outgoing packets. An interface control block describes the interface e.g. network address, MAC address, IP address and interface status such as link enabled and physical mapping required.

***nx\_packet\_data\_start***

This field points to the start of the physical payload area of this packet. It does not have to be immediately following the *NX\_PACKET* header, but that is the default for the *nx\_packet\_pool\_create* service.

***nx\_packet\_data\_end***

This field points to the end of the physical payload area of this packet. The difference between this field and the *nx\_packet\_data\_start* field represents the payload size.

**Packet header*****nx\_packet\_prepend\_ptr*****Purpose**

This field points to the location of where packet data, either protocol header or actual data, is added in front of the existing packet data (if any) in the packet payload area. It must be greater than or equal to the *nx\_packet\_data\_start* pointer location and less than or equal to the *nx\_packet\_append\_ptr* pointer.



*For performance reasons, NetX assumes that when the packet is passed into NetX services for transmission, the prepend pointer points to long word aligned address.*

***nx\_packet\_append\_ptr***

This field points to the end of the data currently in the packet payload area. It must be in between the memory location pointed to by *nx\_packet\_prepend\_ptr* and *nx\_packet\_data\_end*. The difference between this field and the *nx\_packet\_prepend\_ptr* field represents the amount of data in this packet.

***nx\_packet\_fragment\_next***

This field is used to hold fragmented packets until the entire packet can be re-assembled.

***nx\_packet\_pad***

This fields defines the length of padding in 4-byte words to achieve the desired alignment requirement. This field is removed if ***NX\_PACKET\_HEADER\_PAD*** is not defined.

**Packet Header Offsets**

Packet header size is defined to allow enough room to accommodate the size of the header. The ***nx\_packet\_allocate*** service is used to allocate a packet and adjusts the prepend pointer in the packet according to the type of packet specified. The packet type tells NetX the offset required for inserting the protocol header (such as UDP, TCP, or ICMP) in front of the protocol data.

The following types are defined in NetX to take into account the IP header and physical layer (Ethernet)

header in the packet. In the latter case, it is assumed to be 16 bytes taking the required 4-byte alignment into consideration. IP packets are still defined in NetX for applications to allocate packets for IP networks. The following table shows symbols defined:

Packet Type	Value
NX_IP_PACKET	0x24
NX_UDP_PACKET	0x2c
NX_TCP_PACKET	0x38

**Pool Capacity**

The number of packets in a packet pool is a function of the payload size and the total number of bytes in the memory area supplied to the packet pool create service. The capacity of the pool is calculated by dividing the packet size (including the size of the NX\_PACKET header, the payload size, and proper alignment) into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

**Thread Suspension**

Application threads can suspend while waiting for a packet from an empty pool. When a packet is returned to the pool, the suspended thread is given this packet and resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same packet pool, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

**Pool Statistics and Errors**

If enabled, the NetX packet management software keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for packet pools:



- Total Packets in Pool
- Free Packets in Pool
- Pool Empty Allocation Requests
- Pool Empty Allocation Suspensions
- Invalid Packet Releases

All of these statistics and error reports, except for total and free packet count in pool, are built into NetX library unless ***NX\_DISABLE\_PACKET\_INFO*** is defined. This data is available to the application with the ***nx\_packet\_pool\_info\_get*** service.

## Packet Pool Control Block ***NX\_PACKET\_POOL***

The characteristics of each packet memory pool are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the linked list of free packets, the number of free packets, and the payload size for packets in this pool. This structure is defined in the *nx\_api.h* file.

Packet pool control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## IP Protocol

The Internet Protocol (IP) component of NetX is responsible for sending and receiving IP packets on the Internet. In NetX, it is the component ultimately responsible for sending and receiving TCP, UDP, ICMP, and IGMP messages, utilizing the underlying network driver.

NetX supports IP protocol (RFC 791)

IP Addresses

Each host on the Internet has a unique 32-bit identifier called an IP address. There are five classes of IP addresses as described in Figure 4. The ranges of the five IP address classes are as follows:

Class	Range
A	0.0.0.0 to 127.255.255.255
B	128.0.0.0 to 191.255.255.255
C	192.0.0.0 to 223.255.255.255
D	224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255
E	240.0.0.0 to 247.255.255.255

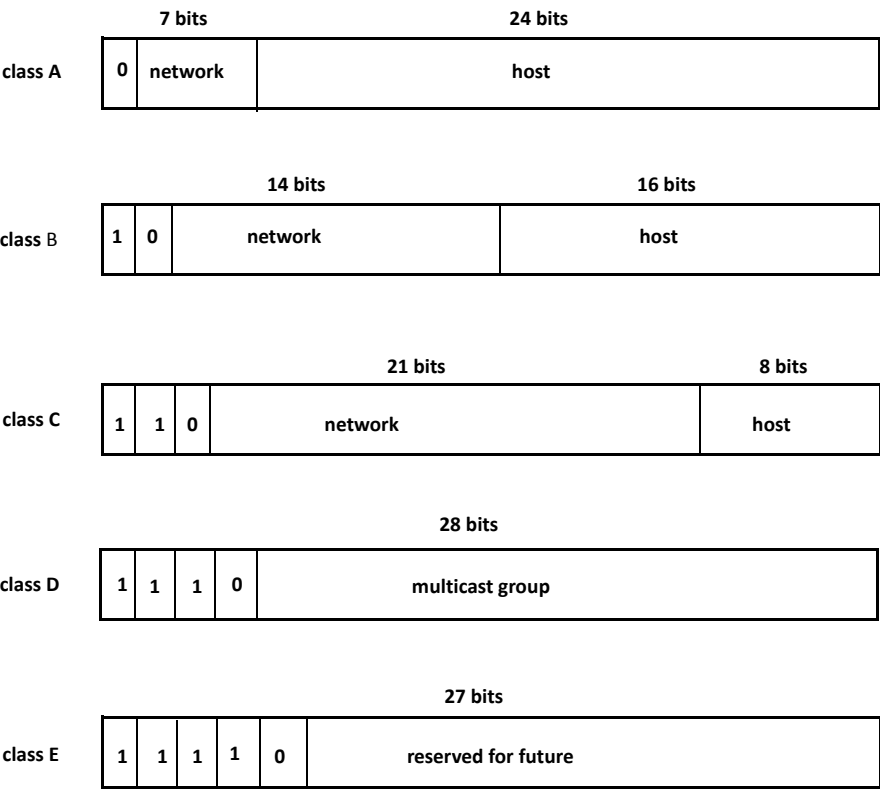


FIGURE 4. IP Address Structure

There are also three types of address specifications: *unicast*, *broadcast*, and *multicast*. Unicast addresses are those IP addresses that identify a specific host on the Internet. Unicast addresses can be either a source or a destination IP address. A broadcast address identifies all hosts on a specific network or sub-network and can only be used as destination addresses. Broadcast addresses are specified by having the host ID portion of the address set to ones. Multicast addresses (Class D) specify a dynamic group of hosts on the Internet. Members of the multicast group may join and leave whenever they wish.

*i* Only connectionless protocols like UDP over IP can utilize broadcast and the limited broadcast capability of the multicast group.

*i* The macro `IP_ADDRESS` is defined in `nx_api.h`. It allows easy specification of IP addresses using commas instead of a periods. For example, `IP_ADDRESS(128,0,0,0)` specifies the first class B address shown in Figure 4.

## IP Gateway Address

Network gateways assist hosts on their networks to relay packets destined to destinations outside the local domain. Each node has some knowledge of which next hop to send to, either the destination one of its neighbors, or through a pre-programmed static routing table. However if these approaches fail, the node should forward the packet to its default gateway which has better knowledge on how to route the packet to its destination. Note that the default gateway must be directly accessible through one of the physical interfaces attached to the IP instance. The application calls **`nx_ip_gateway_address_set`** to configure IP default gateway address.

IP Header

For any IP packet to be sent on the Internet, it must have an IP header. When higher-level protocols (UDP, TCP, ICMP, or IGMP) call the IP component to send a packet, the IP transmit module places an IP header in front of the data. Conversely, when IP packets are received from the network, the IP component removes the IP header from the packet before delivery to the higher-level protocols. Figure 5 shows the format of the IP header.

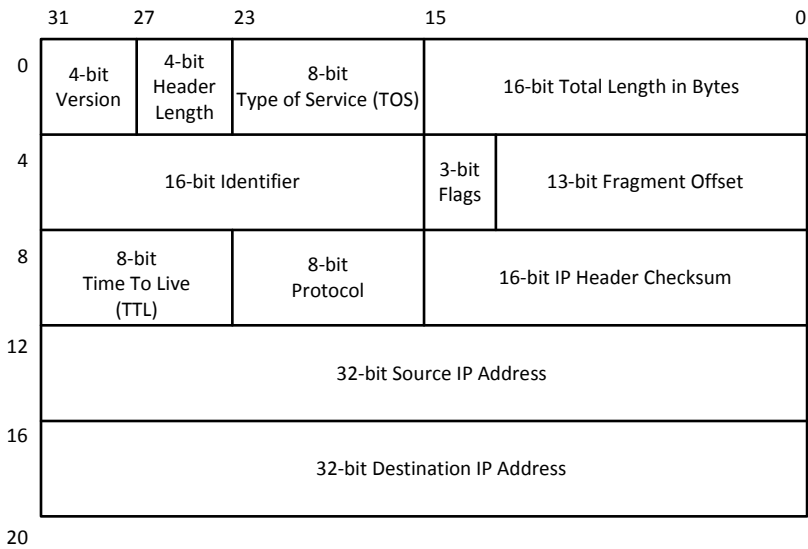


FIGURE 5. IP Header Format



All headers in the TCP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address. For example, the 4-bit version and the 4-bit header length of the IP header must be located on the first byte of the header.

The fields of the IP header are defined as follows:

IP Header Field	Purpose												
<b>4-bit version</b>	This field contains the version of IP this header represents. For IP version 4, which is what NetX supports, the value of this field is 4.												
<b>4-bit header length</b>	This field specifies the number of 32-bit words in the IP header. If no option words are present, the value for this field is 5.												
<b>8-bit type of service (TOS)</b>	This field specifies the type of service requested for this IP packet. Valid requests are as follows: <table><tr><th>TOS Request</th><th>Value</th></tr><tr><td>Normal</td><td>0x00</td></tr><tr><td>Minimum Delay</td><td>0x10</td></tr><tr><td>Maximum Data</td><td>0x08</td></tr><tr><td>Maximum Reliability</td><td>0x04</td></tr><tr><td>Minimum Cost</td><td>0x02</td></tr></table>	TOS Request	Value	Normal	0x00	Minimum Delay	0x10	Maximum Data	0x08	Maximum Reliability	0x04	Minimum Cost	0x02
TOS Request	Value												
Normal	0x00												
Minimum Delay	0x10												
Maximum Data	0x08												
Maximum Reliability	0x04												
Minimum Cost	0x02												
<b>16-bit total length</b>	This field contains the total length of the IP datagram in bytes, including the IP header. An IP datagram is the basic unit of information found on a TCP/IP Internet. It contains a destination and source address in addition to data. Because it is a 16-bit field, the maximum size of an IP datagram is 65,535 bytes.												
<b>16-bit identification</b>	The field is a number used to uniquely identify each IP datagram sent from a host. This number is typically incremented after an IP datagram is sent. It is especially useful in assembling received IP packet fragments.												
<b>3-bit flags</b>	This field contains IP fragmentation information. Bit 14 is the “don’t fragment” bit. If this bit is set, the outgoing IP datagram will not be fragmented. Bit 13 is the “more fragments” bit. If this bit is set, there are more fragments. If this bit is clear, this is the last fragment of the IP packet.												

**IP Header Field**

***13-bit fragment offset***

**Purpose**

This field contains the upper 13-bits of the fragment offset. Because of this, fragment offsets are only allowed on 8-byte boundaries. The first fragment of a fragmented IP datagram will have the “more fragments” bit set and have an offset of 0.

***8-bit time to live (TTL)***

This field contains the number of routers this datagram can pass, which basically limits the lifetime of the datagram.

***8-bit protocol***

This field specifies which protocol is using the IP datagram. The following is a list of valid protocols and their values:

Protocol	Value
ICMP	0x01
IGMP	0x02
TCP	0X06
UDP	0X11

***16-bit checksum***

This field contains the 16-bit checksum that covers the IP header only. There are additional checksums in the higher level protocols that cover the IP payload.

***32-bit source IP address***

This field contains the IP address of the sender and is always a host address.

***32-bit destination IP address***

This field contains the IP address of the receiver or receivers if the address is a broadcast or multicast address.

**Creating IP Instances**

IP instances are created either during initialization or during runtime by application threads. The initial IP address, network mask, default packet pool, media driver, and memory and priority of the internal IP thread are defined by the ***`nx_ip_create`*** service. If the application initializes the IP instance with its IP address set to an invalid address(0.0.0.0), it is assumed that the interface address is going to

resolved by manual configuration later, via RARP, or through DHCP or similar protocols.

For systems with multiple network interfaces, the primary interface is designated when calling ***nx\_ip\_create***. Each additional interface can be attached to the same IP instance by calling ***nx\_ip\_interface\_attach***. This service stores information about the network interface (such as IP address, network mask) in the interface control block, and associates the driver instance with the interface control block in the IP instance. As the driver receives a data packet, it needs to store the interface information in the NX\_PACKET structure before forwarding it to the IP receive logic. Note an IP instance must already be created before attaching any interfaces.

## IP Send

The IP send processing in NetX is very streamlined. The prepend pointer in the packet is moved backwards to accommodate the IP header. The IP header is completed (with all the options specified by the calling protocol layer), the IP checksum is computed in-line, and the packet is dispatched to the associated network driver. In addition, outgoing fragmentation is also coordinated from within the IP send processing.

For IP, NetX initiates ARP requests if physical mapping is needed for the destination IP address.

*i*

*For IP connectivity, packets that require IP address resolution (i.e., physical mapping) are enqueued on the ARP queue until the number of packets queued exceeds the ARP queue depth (defined by the symbol **NX\_ARP\_MAX\_QUEUE\_DEPTH**). If the queue depth is reached, NetX will remove the oldest packet on the queue and continue waiting for address resolution for the remaining packets enqueued. On*

*the other hand, if an ARP entry is not resolved, the pending packets on the ARP entry are released upon ARP entry timeout.*

For systems with multiple network interfaces, NetX chooses an interface based on the destination IP address. The following procedure applies to the selection process:

1. If a destination address is IP broadcast or multi-cast, and if a valid outgoing interface is specified, use that interface. Otherwise, the first physical interface is used.
2. If the destination address is found in the static routing table, the interface associated with the gateway is used.
3. If the destination is on-link, the on-link interface is used.
4. If the destination address is a loopback address 127.0.0.1, the loopback interface is used.
5. If the default gateway is properly configured, use the interface associated with the default gateway to transmit the packet.
6. The output packet is dropped if all the above fails.

## IP Receive

The IP receive processing is either called from the network driver or the internal IP thread (for processing packets on the deferred received packet queue). The IP receive processing examines the protocol field and attempts to dispatch the packet to the proper protocol component. Before the packet is actually dispatched, the IP header is removed by advancing the prepend pointer past the IP header.

IP receive processing also detects fragmented IP packets and performs the necessary steps to re-assemble them if fragmentation is enabled. If fragmentation is needed but not enabled, the packet is dropped.



NetX determines the appropriate network interface based on the interface specified in the packet. If the packet interface is NULL, NetX defaults to the primary interface. This is done to guarantee compatibility with legacy NetX Ethernet drivers.

## Raw IP Send

A raw IP packet is an IP frame that contains upper layer protocol payload not directly supported (and processed) by NetX. A raw packet allows developers to define their own IP-based applications. An application may send raw IP packets directly using the ***nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_send*** service if raw IP packet processing has been enabled with the ***nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_enabled*** service. If the destination address is a multicast or broadcast address, however, NetX will default to the first (primary) interface. Therefore, to send such packets out on secondary interfaces, the application must use the ***nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_interface\_send*** service to specify the source address to use for the outgoing packet.

## Raw IP Receive

If raw IP packet processing is enabled, the application may receive raw IP packets through the ***nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_receive*** service. All incoming packets are processed according to the protocol specified in the IP header. If the protocol specifies UDP, TCP, IGMP or ICMP, NetX will process the packet using the appropriate handler for the packet protocol type. If the protocol is not one of these protocols, and raw IP receive is enabled, the incoming packet will be put into the raw packet queue waiting for the application to receive it via the ***nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_receive*** service. In addition, application threads may suspend with an optional timeout while waiting for a raw IP packet.

## Default Packet Pool

Each IP instance is given a default packet pool during creation. This packet pool is used to allocate packets for ARP, RARP, ICMP, IGMP, various TCP control packets (such as SYN, ACK). If the default packet pool is empty when NetX needs to allocate a packet, NetX may have to abort the particular operation, and will return an error message if possible.

## IP Helper Thread

Each IP instance has a helper thread. This thread is responsible for handling all deferred packet processing and all periodic processing. The IP helper thread is created in ***nx\_ip\_create***. This is where the thread is given its stack and priority. Note that the first processing in the IP helper thread is to finish the network driver initialization associated with the IP create service. After the network driver initialization is complete, the helper thread starts an endless loop to process packet and periodic requests.

*i*

*If unexplained behavior is seen within the IP helper thread, increasing its stack size during the IP create service is the first debugging step. If the stack is too small, the IP helper thread could possibly be overwriting memory, which may cause unusual problems.*

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to receive raw IP packets. After a raw packet is received, the new packet is given to the first thread suspended and that thread is resumed. NetX services for receiving packets all have an optional suspension timeout. When a packet is received or the timeout expires, the application thread is resumed with the appropriate completion status.

## IP Statistics and Errors

If enabled, the NetX keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP instance:

- Total IP Packets Sent
- Total IP Bytes Sent
- Total IP Packets Received
- Total IP Bytes Received
- Total IP Invalid Packets
- Total IP Receive Packets Dropped
- Total IP Receive Checksum Errors
- Total IP Send Packets Dropped
- Total IP Fragments Sent
- Total IP Fragments Received

All of these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the ***nx\_ip\_info\_get*** service.

## IP Control Block NX\_IP

The characteristics of each IP instance are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the IP addresses and network masks of each network device, and a table of neighbor IP and physical hardware address mapping. This structure is defined in the ***nx\_api.h*** file.

IP instance control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Static IP Routing

The static routing feature allows an application to specify an IP network and next hop address for specific out of network destination IP addresses. If static routing is enabled, NetX searches through the static routing table for an entry matching the destination address of the packet to send. If no match is found, NetX searches through the list of physical interfaces and chooses a source IP address and

next hop address based on the destination IP address and the network mask. If the destination does not match any of the IP addresses of the network drivers attached to the IP instance, NetX chooses an interface that is directly connected to the default gateway, and uses the IP address of the interface as source address, and the default gateway as the next hop.

Entries can be added and removed from the static routing table using the ***nx\_ip\_static\_route\_add*** and ***nx\_ip\_static\_route\_delete*** services, respectively. To use static routing, the host application must enable this feature by defining ***NX\_ENABLE\_IP\_STATIC\_ROUTING***.

*i*

*When adding an entry to the static routing table, NetX checks for a matching entry for the specified destination address already in the table. If one exists, it gives preference to the entry with the smaller network (longer prefix) in the network mask.*

## IP Fragmentation

The network device may have limits on the size of outgoing packets. This limit is called the maximum transmission unit (MTU). IP MTU is the largest IP frame size a link layer driver is able to transmit without fragmenting the IP packet. During a device driver initialization phase, the driver module must configure its IP MTU size via the service ***nx\_ip\_interface\_mtu\_set***.

Although not recommended, the application may generate datagrams larger than the underlying IP MTU supported by the device. Before transmitting such IP datagram, the IP layer must fragment these packets. On receiving fragmented IP frames, the receiving end must store all fragmented IP frames with the same fragmentation ID, and reassemble them in order. If the IP receive logic is unable to

collect all the fragments to restore the original IP frame in time, all the fragments are released. It is up to the upper layer protocol to detect such packet loss and recover from it.

In order to support IP fragmentation and reassembly operation, the system designer must enable the IP fragmentation feature in NetX using the ***nx\_ip\_fragment\_enable*** service. If this feature is not enabled, incoming fragmented IP packets are discarded, as well as packets that exceed the network driver's MTU.



*The IP Fragmentation logic can be removed completely by defining ***NX\_DISABLE\_FRAGMENTATION*** when building the NetX library. Doing so helps reduce the code size of NetX.*

## Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) in IP

The Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is responsible for dynamically mapping 32-bit IP addresses to those of the underlying physical media (RFC 826). Ethernet is the most typical physical media, and it supports 48-bit addresses. The need for ARP is determined by the network driver supplied to the ***nx\_ip\_create*** service. If physical mapping is required, the network driver must set the flag ***nx\_interface\_address\_mapping\_needed*** in the interface structure.

### ARP Enable

For ARP to function properly, it must first be enabled by the application with the ***nx\_arp\_enable*** service. This service sets up various data structures for ARP processing, including the creation of an ARP cache

area from the memory supplied to the ARP enable service.

## ARP Cache

The ARP cache can be viewed as an array of internal ARP mapping data structures. Each internal structure is capable of maintaining the relationship between an IP address and a physical hardware address. In addition, each data structure has link pointers so it can be part of multiple linked lists.

Application can look up an IP address from the ARP cache by supplying hardware MAC address using the service ***nx\_arp\_ip\_address\_find*** if the mapping exists in the ARP table. Similarly, the service ***nx\_arp\_hardware\_address\_find*** returns the MAC address for a given IP address.

## ARP Dynamic Entries

By default, the ARP enable service places all entries in the ARP cache on the list of available dynamic ARP entries. A dynamic ARP entry is allocated from this list by NetX when a send request to an unmapped IP address is detected. After allocation, the ARP entry is set up and an ARP request is sent to the physical media.

A dynamic entry can also be created by the service ***nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entry\_set***.



*If all dynamic ARP entries are in use, the least recently used ARP entry is replaced with a new mapping.*

## ARP Static Entries

The application can also set up static ARP mapping by using the ***nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_create*** service. This service allocates an ARP entry from the dynamic ARP entry list and places it on the static list

with the mapping information supplied by the application. Static ARP entries are not subject to reuse or aging. The application can delete a static entry by using the service ***nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_delete***. To remove all static entries in the ARP table, the application may use the service ***nx\_arp\_static\_entries\_delete***.

## Automatic ARP Entry

NetX records the peer's IP/MAC mapping after the peer responses to the ARP request. NetX also implements the automatic ARP entry feature where it records peer IP/MAC address mapping based on unsolicited ARP requests from the network. This feature allows the ARP table to be populated with peer information, reducing the delay needed to go through the ARP request/response cycle. However the downside with enabling automatic ARP is that the ARP table tend to fill up quickly on a busy network with many nodes on the local link, which would eventually lead to ARP entry replacement.

This feature is enabled by default. To disable it, the NetX library must be compiled with the symbol ***NX\_DISABLE\_ARP\_AUTO\_ENTRY*** defined.

## ARP Messages

As mentioned previously, an ARP request message is sent when the IP task detects that mapping is needed for an IP address. ARP requests are sent periodically (every ***NX\_ARP\_UPDATE\_RATE*** seconds) until a corresponding ARP response is received. A total of ***NX\_ARP\_MAXIMUM\_RETRIES*** ARP requests are made before the ARP attempt is abandoned. When an ARP response is received, the associated physical address information is stored in the ARP entry that is in the cache.

For multihome systems, NetX determines which interface to send the ARP requests and responses based on destination address specified.

*i*

*Outgoing IP packets are queued while NetX waits for the ARP response. The number of outgoing IP packets queued is defined by the constant **`NX_ARP_MAX_QUEUE_DEPTH`**.*

NetX also responds to ARP requests from other nodes on the local IP network. When an external ARP request is made that matches the current IP address of the interface that receives the ARP request, NetX builds an ARP response message that contains the current physical address.

The formats of Ethernet ARP requests and responses are shown in Figure 6 and are described below:

<b>Request/Response Field</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
<b><i>Ethernet Destination Address</i></b>	This 6-byte field contains the destination address for the ARP response and is a broadcast (all ones) for ARP requests. This field is setup by the network driver.
<b><i>Ethernet Source Address</i></b>	This 6-byte field contains the address of the sender of the ARP request or response and is set up by the network driver.
<b><i>Frame Type</i></b>	This 2-byte field contains the type of Ethernet frame present and, for ARP requests and responses, this is equal to 0x0806. This is the last field the network driver is responsible for setting up.
<b><i>Hardware Type</i></b>	This 2-byte field contains the hardware type, which is 0x0001 for Ethernet.
<b><i>Protocol Type</i></b>	This 2-byte field contains the protocol type, which is 0x0800 for IP addresses.
<b><i>Hardware Size</i></b>	This 1-byte field contains the hardware address size, which is 6 for Ethernet addresses.



Offset				
0	Ethernet Destination Address (6-bytes)			
6	Ethernet Source Address (6-bytes)			
12	Frame Type 0x0806		Hardware Type 0x0001	Protocol Type 0x0800
18	H Size 6	P Size 4	Operation (2-bytes)	
22	Sender's Ethernet Address (6-bytes)			
28	Sender's IP Address (4-bytes)			
32	Target's Ethernet Address (6-bytes)			
38	Target's IP Address (4-bytes)			

FIGURE 6. ARP Packet Format

Request/Response Field	Purpose
<b>Protocol Size</b>	This 1-byte field contains the IP address size, which is 4 for IP addresses.
<b>Operation Code</b>	This 2-byte field contains the operation for this ARP packet. An ARP request is specified with the value of 0x0001, while an ARP response is represented by a value of 0x0002.
<b>Sender Ethernet Address</b>	This 6-byte field contains the sender's Ethernet address.
<b>Sender IP Address</b>	This 4-byte field contains the sender's IP address.
<b>Target Ethernet Address</b>	This 6-byte field contains the target's Ethernet address.
<b>Target IP Address</b>	This 4-byte field contains the target's IP address.

*ARP requests and responses are Ethernet-level packets. All other TCP/IP packets are encapsulated by an IP packet header.*

*All ARP messages in the TCP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address.*

## ARP Aging

NetX supports automatic dynamic ARP entry invalidation. ***NX\_ARP\_EXPIRATION\_RATE*** specifies the number of seconds an established IP address to physical mapping stays valid. After expiration, the ARP entry is removed from the ARP cache. The next attempt to send to the corresponding IP address will result in a new ARP request. Setting ***NX\_ARP\_EXPIRATION\_RATE*** to zero disables ARP aging, which is the default configuration.

## ARP Defend

When an ARP request or ARP response packet is received and the sender has the same IP address, which conflicts with the IP address of this node, NetX sends an ARP request for that address as a defense. If the conflict ARP packet is received more than once in 10 seconds, NetX does not send more defend packets. The default interval 10 seconds can be redefined by ***NX\_ARP\_DEFEND\_INTERVAL***. This behavior follows the policy specified in 2.4(c) of RFC5227. Since Windows XP ignores ARP announcement as a response for its ARP probe, user can define ***NX\_ARP\_DEFEND\_BY\_REPLY*** to send ARP response as additional defence.

## ARP Statistics and Errors

If enabled, the NetX ARP software keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the

application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP's ARP processing:

- Total ARP Requests Sent
- Total ARP Requests Received
- Total ARP Responses Sent
- Total ARP Responses Received
- Total ARP Dynamic Entries
- Total ARP Static Entries
- Total ARP Aged Entries
- Total ARP Invalid Messages

All these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the ***nx\_arp\_info\_get*** service.

## Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) in IP

The Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) is the protocol for requesting network assignment of the host's 32-bit IP addresses (RFC 903). This is done through an RARP request and continues periodically until a network member assigns an IP address to the host network interface in an RARP response. The application creates an IP instance by the service ***nx\_ip\_create*** with a zero IP address. If RARP is enabled by the application, it can use the RARP protocol to request an IP address from the network server accessible through the interface that has a zero IP address.

### RARP Enable

To use RARP, the application must create the IP instance with an IP address of zero, then enable RARP using the service ***nx\_rarp\_enable***. For multihomed systems, at least one network device associated with the IP instance must have an IP address of zero. The RARP processing periodically

sends RARP request messages for the NetX system requiring an IP address until a valid RARP reply with the network designated IP address is received. At this point, RARP processing is complete.

After RARP has been enabled, it is disabled automatically after all interface addresses are resolved. The application may force RARP to terminate by using the service ***nx\_rarp\_disable***.

## RARP Request

The format of an RARP request packet is almost identical to the ARP packet shown in Figure 6 on page 73. The only difference is the frame type field is 0x8035 and the *Operation Code* field is 3, designating an RARP request. As mentioned previously, RARP requests will be sent periodically (every ***NX\_RARP\_UPDATE\_RATE*** seconds) until a RARP reply with the network assigned IP address is received.



*All RARP messages in the TCP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address.*

## RARP Reply

RARP reply messages are received from the network and contain the network assigned IP address for this host. The format of an RARP reply packet is almost identical to the ARP packet shown in Figure 6. The only difference is the frame type field is 0x8035 and the *Operation Code* field is 4, which designates an RARP reply. After received, the IP address is setup in the IP instance, the periodic RARP request is disabled, and the IP instance is now ready for normal network operation.

For multihome hosts, the IP address is applied to the requesting network interface. If there are other

network interfaces still requesting an IP address assignment, the periodic RARP service continues until all interface IP address requests are resolved.



*The application should not use the IP instance until the RARP processing is complete. The **`nx_ip_status_check`** may be used by applications to wait for the RARP completion. For multihomed systems, the application should not use the requesting interface until the RARP processing is complete on that interface. Status of the IP address on the secondary device can be checked with the **`nx_ip_interface_status_check`** service.*

## RARP Statistics and Errors

If enabled, the NetX RARP software keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP's RARP processing:

- Total RARP Requests Sent
- Total RARP Responses Received
- Total RARP Invalid Messages

All these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the **`nx_rarp_info_get`** service.

## Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)

Internet Control Message Protocol for IP (ICMP) is limited to passing error and control information between IP network members.

Like most other application layer (e.g., TCP/IP) messages, ICMP messages are encapsulated by an IP header with the ICMP protocol designation.

## ICMP Statistics and Errors

If enabled, NetX keeps track of several ICMP statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP's ICMP processing:

- Total ICMP Pings Sent
- Total ICMP Ping Timeouts
- Total ICMP Ping Threads Suspended
- Total ICMP Ping Responses Received
- Total ICMP Checksum Errors
- Total ICMP Unhandled Messages

All these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the ***nx\_icmp\_info\_get*** service.

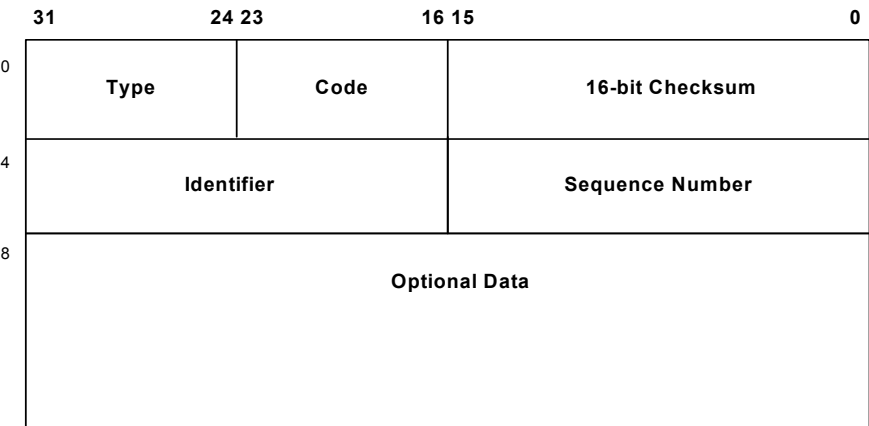
## ICMP Enable

Before ICMP messages can be processed by NetX, the application must call the ***nx\_icmp\_enable*** service to enable ICMP processing. After this is done, the application can issue ping requests and field incoming ping packets.

## ICMP Echo Request

An echo request is one type of ICMP message that is typically used to check for the existence of a specific node on the network, as identified by its host IP address. The popular ping command is implemented using ICMP echo request/echo reply messages. If the specific host is present, its network stack processes the

ping request and responses with a ping response. Figure 7 details the ICMP ping message format.



(Note: IP header is prepended)

FIGURE 7. ICMP Ping Message



*All ICMP messages in the TCP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address.*

The following table describes the ICMP header format:

Header Field	Purpose
Type	This field specifies the ICMP message (bits 31-24). The most common are: <div>0 Echo Reply 8 Echo Request</div>
Code	This field is context specific on the type field (bits 23-16). For an echo request or reply the code is set to zero.

**Checksum**

This field contains the 16-bit checksum of the one's complement sum of the ICMP message including the entire the ICMP header starting with the Type field. Before generating the checksum, the checksum field is cleared.

**Identification**

This field contains an ID value identifying the host; a host should use the ID extracted from an ECHO request in the ECHO REPLY (bits 31-16).

**Sequence number**

This field contains an ID value; a host should use the ID extracted from an ECHO request in the ECHO REPLY (bits 31-16). Unlike the identifier field, this value will change in a subsequent Echo request from the same host (bits 15-0).

**ICMP Echo Response**

A ping response is another type of ICMP message that is generated internally by the ICMP component in response to an external ping request. In addition to acknowledgement, the ping response also contains a copy of the user data supplied in the ping request.

## Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)

The Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) provides a device to communicate with its neighbors and its routers that it intends to receive, or join, an IP multicast group (RFC 1112 and RFC 2236). A multicast group is basically a dynamic collection of network members and is represented by a Class D IP address. Members of the multicast group may leave at any time, and new members may join at any time. The coordination involved in joining and leaving the group is the responsibility of IGMP.



## IGMP Enable

Before any multicasting activity can take place in NetX, the application must call the ***nx\_igmp\_enable*** service. This service performs basic IGMP initialization in preparation for multicast requests.

## Multicast IP Addressing

As mentioned previously, multicast addresses are actually Class D IP addresses as shown in Figure 4 on page 58. The lower 28-bits of the Class D address correspond to the multicast group ID. There are a series of pre-defined multicast addresses; however, the *all hosts address* (244.0.0.1) is particularly important to IGMP processing. The *all hosts address* is used by routers to query all multicast members to report on which multicast groups they belong to.

## Physical Address Mapping in IP

Class D multicast addresses map directly to physical Ethernet addresses ranging from 01.00.5e.00.00.00 through 01.00.5e.7f.ff.ff. The lower 23 bits of the IP multicast address map directly to the lower 23 bits of the Ethernet address.

## Multicast Group Join

Applications that need to join a particular multicast group may do so by calling the ***nx\_igmp\_multicast\_join*** service. This service keeps track of the number of requests to join this multicast group. If this is the first application request to join the multicast group, an IGMP report is sent out on the primary network indicating this host's intention to join the group. Next, the network driver is called to set up for listening for packets with the Ethernet address for this multicast group.

In a multihome system, if the multicast group is accessible via a specific interface, application shall use the service ***nx\_igmp\_multicast\_interface\_join***

instead of ***nx\_igmp\_multicast\_join***, which is limited to multicast groups on the primary network.

## Multicast Group Leave

Applications that need to leave a previously joined multicast group may do so by calling the ***nx\_igmp\_multicast\_leave*** service. This service reduces the internal count associated with how many times the group was joined. If there are no outstanding join requests for a group, the network driver is called to disable listening for packets with this multicast group's Ethernet address.

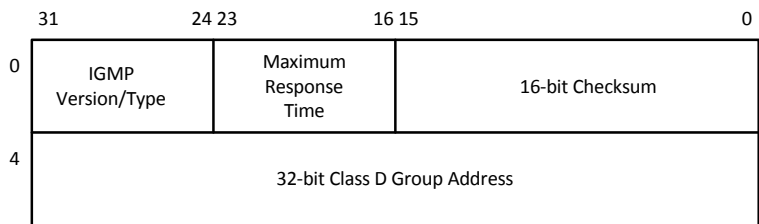
## Multicast Loopback

An application may wish to receive multicast traffic originated from one of the sources on the same node. This requires the IP multicast component to have loopback enabled by using the service ***nx\_igmp\_loopback\_enable***.

## IGMP Report Message

When the application joins a multicast group, an IGMP report message is sent via the network to indicate the host's intention to join a particular multicast group. The format of the IGMP report message is shown in Figure 8. The multicast group address is used for both the group message in the IGMP report message and the destination IP address.

In the figure above (Figure 8), the IGMP header contains a version/type field, maximum response time, a checksum field, and a multicast group address field. For IGMPv1 messages, the Maximum Response Time field is always set to zero, as this is not part of the IGMPv1 protocol. The Maximum Response Time field is set when the host receives a Query type IGMP message and cleared when a host



(Note: IP header is prepended)

FIGURE 8. IGMP Report Message

receives another host's Report type message as defined by the IGMPv2 protocol.

The following describes the IGMP header format:

Header Field	Purpose
Version	This field specifies the IGMP version (bits 31- 28).
Type	This field specifies the type of IGMP message (bits 27 -24).
Maximum Response Time	Not used in IGMPv1. In IGMPv2 this field serves as the maximum response time.
Checksum	This field contains the 16-bit checksum of the one's complement sum of the IGMP message starting with the IGMP version (bits 0-15)
Group Address	32-bit class D group IP address

IGMP report messages are also sent in response to IGMP query messages sent by a multicast router. Multicast routers periodically send query messages out to see which hosts still require group membership. Query messages have the same format as the IGMP Report message shown in Figure 8. The only differences are the IGMP type is equal to 1 and the group address field is set to 0. IGMP Query

messages are sent to the *all hosts* IP address by the multicast router. A host that still wishes to maintain group membership responds by sending another IGMP Report message.



*All messages in the TCP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address.*

## IGMP Statistics and Errors

If enabled, the NetX IGMP software keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP's IGMP processing:

- Total IGMP Reports Sent
- Total IGMP Queries Received
- Total IGMP Checksum Errors
- Total IGMP Current Groups Joined

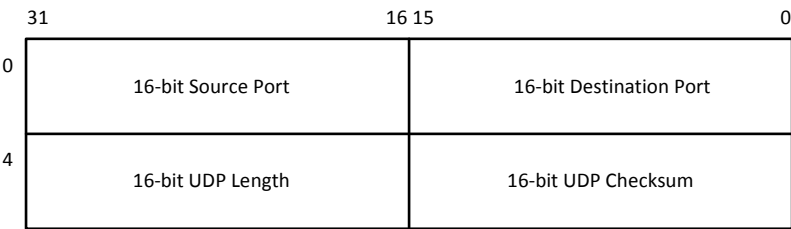
All these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the ***nx\_igmp\_info\_get*** service.

## User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

The User Datagram Protocol (UDP) provides the simplest form of data transfer between network members (RFC 768). UDP data packets are sent from one network member to another in a best effort fashion; i.e., there is no built-in mechanism for acknowledgement by the packet recipient. In addition, sending a UDP packet does not require any connection to be established in advance. Because of this, UDP packet transmission is very efficient.

UDP Header

UDP places a simple packet header in front of the application’s data on transmission, and removes a similar UDP header from the packet on reception before delivering a received UDP packet to the application. UDP utilizes the IP protocol for sending and receiving packets, which means there is an IP header in front of the UDP header when the packet is on the network. Figure 9 shows the format of the UDP header.



(Note: IP header is prepended)

FIGURE 9. UDP Header



*All headers in the UDP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address.*

The following describes the UDP header format:

Header Field	Purpose
16-bit source port number	This field contains the port on which the UDP packet is being sent from. Valid UDP ports range from 1 through 0xFFFF.
16-bit destination port number	This field contains the UDP port to which the packet is being sent to. Valid UDP ports range from 1 through 0xFFFF.

Header Field	Purpose
16-bit UDP length	This field contains the number of bytes in the UDP packet, including the size of the UDP header.
16-bit UDP checksum	This field contains the 16-bit checksum for the packet, including the UDP header, the packet data area, and the pseudo IP header.

**UDP Enable** Before UDP packet transmission is possible, the application must first enable UDP by calling the ***nx\_udp\_enable*** service. After enabled, the application is free to send and receive UDP packets.

**UDP Socket Create** UDP sockets are created either during initialization or during runtime by application threads. The initial type of service, time to live, and receive queue depth are defined by the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_create*** service. There are no limits on the number of UDP sockets in an application.

**UDP Checksum** UDP specifies a one’s complement 16-bit checksum that covers the IP pseudo header (consisting of the source IP address, destination IP address, and the protocol/length IP word), the UDP header, and the UDP packet data. If the calculated UDP checksum is 0, it is stored as all ones (0xFFFF). If the sending socket has the UDP checksum logic disabled, a zero is placed in the UDP checksum field to indicate the checksum was not calculated.

If the UDP checksum does not match the computed checksum by the receiver, the UDP packet is simply discarded.

On the IP network, UDP checksum is optional. NetX allows an application to enable or disable UDP checksum calculation on a per-socket basis. By default, the UDP socket checksum logic is enabled. The application can disable checksum logic for a particular UDP socket by calling the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable*** service.

Certain Ethernet controllers are able to generate the UDP checksum on the fly. If the system is able to use hardware checksum computation feature, the NetX library can be built without the checksum logic. To disable UDP software checksum, the NetX library must be built with the following symbols defined: ***NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_TX\_CHECKSUM*** and ***NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_RX\_CHECKSUM*** (described in Chapter two). The configuration options remove UDP checksum logic from NetX entirely, while calling the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable*** service allows the application to disable IP UDP checksum processing on a per socket basis.

## UDP Ports and Binding

A UDP port is a logical end point in the UDP protocol. There are 65,535 valid ports in the UDP component of NetX, ranging from 1 through 0xFFFF. To send or receive UDP data, the application must first create a UDP socket, then bind it to a desired port. After binding a UDP socket to a port, the application may send and receive data on that socket.

## UDP Fast Path™

The UDP Fast Path™ is the name for a low packet overhead path through the NetX UDP implementation. Sending a UDP packet requires just a few function calls: ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send***, ***nx\_ip\_packet\_send***, and the eventual call to the network driver. ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send*** is available in NetX for existing NetX applications and is only applicable for IP packets. The preferred method, however, is to use ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send*** service

discussed below. On UDP packet reception, the UDP packet is either placed on the appropriate UDP socket receive queue or delivered to a suspended application thread in a single function call from the network driver's receive interrupt processing. This highly optimized logic for sending and receiving UDP packets is the essence of UDP Fast Path technology.

## UDP Packet Send

Sending UDP data over IP networks is easily accomplished by calling the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send*** function. The caller must set the IP version in the *IP address* field. NetX will determine the best source address for transmitted UDP packets based on the destination IP address. This service places a UDP header in front of the packet data and sends it out onto the network using an internal IP send routine. There is no thread suspension on sending UDP packets because all UDP packet transmissions are processed immediately.

For multicast or broadcast destinations, the application should specify the source IP address to use if the NetX device has multiple IP addresses to choose from. This can be done with the services ***nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send***.



*If ***nx\_udp\_socket\_send*** is used for transmitting multicast or broadcast packets, the IP address of the first interface is used as source address.*



*If UDP checksum logic is enabled for this socket, the checksum operation is performed in the context of the calling thread, without blocking access to the UDP or IP data structures.*



*The UDP payload data residing in the ***NX\_PACKET*** structure should reside on a long-word boundary. The application needs to leave sufficient space between the prepend pointer and the data start*



*pointer for NetX to place the UDP, IP, and physical media headers.*

## UDP Packet Receive

Application threads may receive UDP packets from a particular socket by calling ***nx\_udp\_socket\_receive***. The socket receive function delivers the oldest packet on the socket's receive queue. If there are no packets on the receive queue, the calling thread can suspend (with an optional timeout) until a packet arrives.

The UDP receive packet processing (usually called from the network driver's receive interrupt handler) is responsible for either placing the packet on the UDP socket's receive queue or delivering it to the first suspended thread waiting for a packet. If the packet is queued, the receive processing also checks the maximum receive queue depth associated with the socket. If this newly queued packet exceeds the queue depth, the oldest packet in the queue is discarded.

## UDP Receive Notify

If the application thread needs to process received data from more than one socket, the ***nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify*** function should be used. This function registers a receive packet callback function for the socket. Whenever a packet is received on the socket, the callback function is executed.

The contents of the callback function is application-specific; however, it would most likely contain logic to inform the processing thread that a packet is now available on the corresponding socket.

## Peer Address and Port

On receiving a UDP packet, application may find the sender's IP address and port number by using the service ***nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract***. On

successful return, this service provides information on the sender's IP address, sender's port number, and the local interface through which the packet was received.

## Thread Suspension

As mentioned previously, application threads can suspend while attempting to receive a UDP packet on a particular UDP port. After a packet is received on that port, it is given to the first thread suspended and that thread is then resumed. An optional timeout is available when suspending on a UDP receive packet, a feature available for most NetX services.

## UDP Socket Statistics and Errors

If enabled, the NetX UDP socket software keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP/UDP instance:

- Total UDP Packets Sent
- Total UDP Bytes Sent
- Total UDP Packets Received
- Total UDP Bytes Received
- Total UDP Invalid Packets
- Total UDP Receive Packets Dropped
- Total UDP Receive Checksum Errors
- UDP Socket Packets Sent
- UDP Socket Bytes Sent
- UDP Socket Packets Received
- UDP Socket Bytes Received
- UDP Socket Packets Queued
- UDP Socket Receive Packets Dropped
- UDP Socket Checksum Errors

All these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the ***`nx_udp_info_get`*** service for UDP statistics amassed over all UDP sockets, and the ***`nx_udp_socket_info_get`*** service for UDP statistics on the specified UDP socket.

**UDP Socket  
Control Block  
NX\_UDP\_SOCKET**

The characteristics of each UDP socket are found in the associated NX\_UDP\_SOCKET control block. It contains useful information such as the link to the IP data structure, the network interface for the sending and receiving paths, the bound port, and the receive packet queue. This structure is defined in the *nx\_api.h* file.

## Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) provides reliable stream data transfer between two network members (RFC 793). All data sent from one network member are verified and acknowledged by the receiving member. In addition, the two members must have established a connection prior to any data transfer. All this results in reliable data transfer; however, it does require substantially more overhead than the previously described UDP data transfer.

**TCP Header**

On transmission, TCP header is placed in front of the data from the user. On reception, TCP header is removed from the incoming packet, leaving only the user data available to the application. TCP utilizes the IP protocol to send and receive packets, which means there is an IP header in front of the TCP header when the packet is on the network. Figure 10 shows the format of the TCP header.

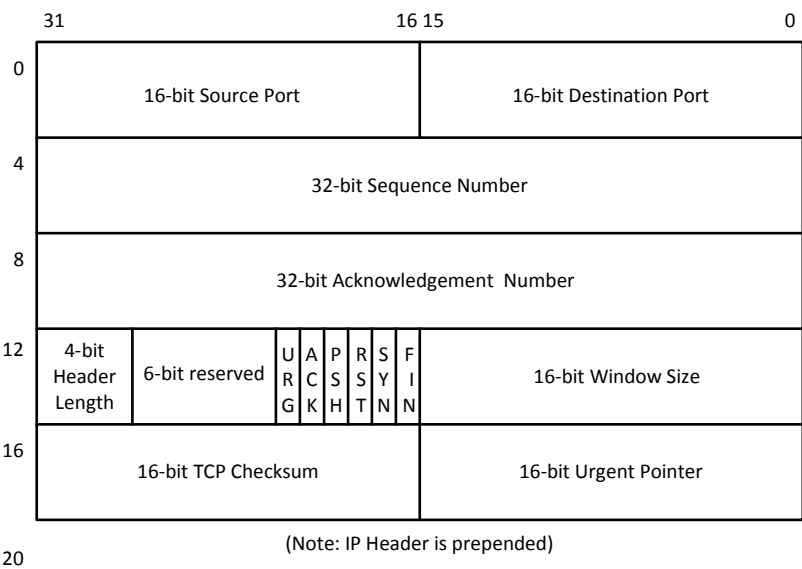


FIGURE 10. TCP Header

The following describes the TCP header format:

Header Field	Purpose
16-bit source port number	This field contains the port the TCP packet is being sent out on. Valid TCP ports range from 1 through 0xFFFF.
16-bit destination port number	This field contains the TCP port the packet is being sent to. Valid TCP ports range from 1 through 0xFFFF.
32-bit sequence number	This field contains the sequence number for data sent from this end of the connection. The original sequence is established during the initial connection sequence between two TCP nodes. Every data transfer from that point results in an increment of the sequence number by the amount bytes sent.

**Header Field****Purpose****32-bit  
acknowledgement  
number**

This field contains the sequence number corresponding to the last byte received by this side of the connection. This is used to determine whether or not data previously sent has successfully been received by the other end of the connection.

**4-bit header length**

This field contains the number of 32-bit words in the TCP header. If no options are present in the TCP header, this field is 5.

**6-bit code bits**

This field contains the six different code bits used to indicate various control information associated with the connection. The control bits are defined as follows:

---

Name	Bit	Meaning
URG	21	Urgent data present
ACK	20	Acknowledgement number is valid
PSH	19	Handle this data immediately
RST	18	Reset the connection
SYN	17	Synchronize sequence numbers (used to establish connection)
FIN	16	Sender is finished with transmit (used to close connection)

**16-bit window**

This field is used for flow control. It contains the amount of bytes the socket can currently receive. This basically is used for flow control. The sender is responsible for making sure the data to send will fit into the receiver's advertised window.

Header Field	Purpose
<b>16-bit TCP checksum</b>	This field contains the 16-bit checksum for the packet including the TCP header, the packet data area, and the pseudo IP header.
<b>16-bit urgent pointer</b>	This field contains the positive offset of the last byte of the urgent data. This field is only valid if the URG code bit is set in the header.

***i** All headers in the TCP/IP implementation are expected to be in **big endian** format. In this format, the most significant byte of the word resides at the lowest byte address.*

## TCP Enable

Before TCP connections and packet transmissions are possible, the application must first enable TCP by calling the ***nx\_tcp\_enable*** service. After enabled, the application is free to access all TCP services.

## TCP Socket Create

TCP sockets are created either during initialization or during runtime by application threads. The initial type of service, time to live, and window size are defined by the ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_create*** service. There are no limits on the number of TCP sockets in an application.

## TCP Checksum

TCP specifies a one's complement 16-bit checksum that covers the IP pseudo header, (consisting of the source IP address, destination IP address, and the protocol/length IP word), the TCP header, and the TCP packet data.

Certain network controllers are able to perform TCP checksum computation and validation in hardware.

For such systems, applications may want to use hardware checksum logic as much as possible to reduce runtime overhead. Applications may disable TCP checksum computation logic from the NetX library altogether at build time by defining ***`NX_DISABLE_TCP_TX_CHECKSUM`*** and ***`NX_DISABLE_TCP_RX_CHECKSUM`***. This way, the TCP checksum code is not compiled in.

## TCP Port

A TCP port is a logical connection point in the TCP protocol. There are 65,535 valid ports in the TCP component of NetX, ranging from 1 through 0xFFFF. Unlike UDP in which data from one port can be sent to any other destination port, a TCP port is connected to another specific TCP port, and only when this connection is established can any data transfer take place—and only between the two ports making up the connection.



*TCP ports are completely separate from UDP ports; e.g., UDP port number 1 has no relation to TCP port number 1.*

## Client-Server Model

To use TCP for data transfer, a connection must first be established between the two TCP sockets. The establishment of the connection is done in a client-server fashion. The client side of the connection is the side that initiates the connection, while the server side simply waits for client connection requests before any processing is done.



*For multihomed devices, NetX automatically determines the source address to use for the connection, and the next hop address based on the destination IP address of the connection.*

## TCP Socket State Machine

The connection between two TCP sockets (one client and one server) is complex and is managed in a state machine manner. Each TCP socket starts in a CLOSED state. Through connection events each socket's state machine migrates into the ESTABLISHED state, which is where the bulk of the data transfer in TCP takes place. When one side of the connection no longer wishes to send data, it disconnects. After the other side disconnects, eventually the TCP socket returns to the CLOSED state. This process repeats each time a TCP client and server establish and close a connection. Figure 11 on page 97 shows the various states of the TCP state machine.

## TCP Client Connection

As mentioned previously, the client side of the TCP connection initiates a connection request to a TCP server. Before a connection request can be made, TCP must be enabled on the client IP instance. In addition, the client TCP socket must next be created with the ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_create*** service and bound to a port via the ***nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind*** service.

After the client socket is bound, the ***nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect*** service is used to establish a connection with a TCP server. Note the socket must be in a CLOSED state to initiate a connection attempt. Establishing the connection starts with NetX issuing a SYN packet and then waiting for a SYN ACK packet back from the server, which signifies acceptance of the connection request. After the SYN ACK is received, NetX responds with an ACK packet and promotes the client socket to the ESTABLISHED state.

## TCP Client Disconnection

Closing the connection is accomplished by calling ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect***. If no suspension is



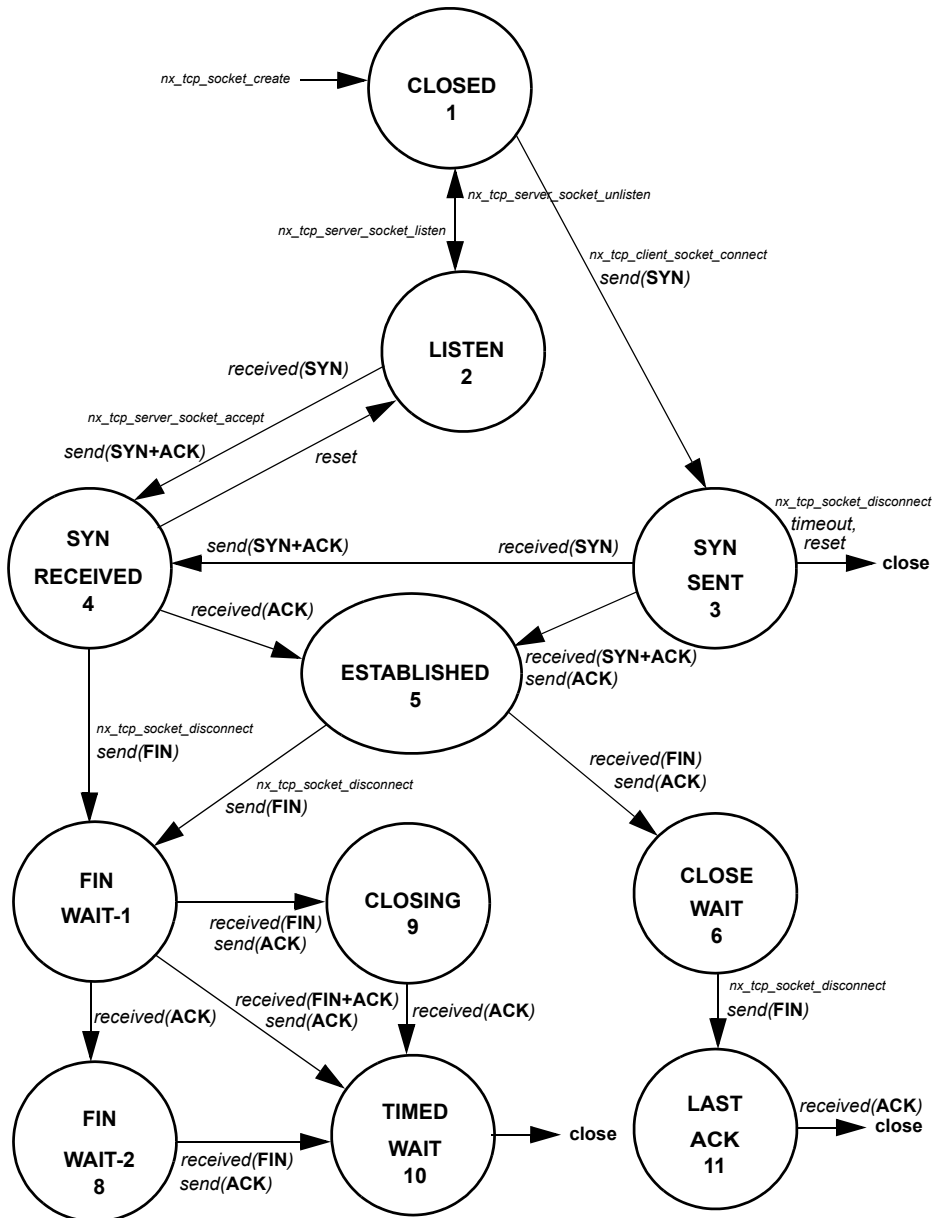


FIGURE 11. States of the TCP State Machine

specified, the client socket sends a RST packet to the server socket and places the socket in the CLOSED state. Otherwise, if a suspension is requested, the full TCP disconnect protocol is performed, as follows:

- If the server previously initiated a disconnect request (the client socket has already received a FIN packet, responded with an ACK, and is in the CLOSE WAIT state), NetX promotes the client TCP socket state to the LAST ACK state and sends a FIN packet. It then waits for an ACK from the server before completing the disconnect and entering the CLOSED state.
- If on the other hand, the client is the first to initiate a disconnect request (the server has not disconnected and the socket is still in the ESTABLISHED state), NetX sends a FIN packet to initiate the disconnect and waits to receive a FIN and an ACK from the server before completing the disconnect and placing the socket in a CLOSED state.

If there are still packets on the socket transmit queue, NetX suspends for the specified timeout to allow the packets to be acknowledged. If the timeout expires, NetX empties the transmit queue of the client socket.

To unbind the port from the client socket, the application calls ***`nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`***. The socket must be in a CLOSED state or in the process of disconnecting (i.e., TIMED WAIT state) before the port is released; otherwise, an error is returned.

Finally, if the application no longer needs the client socket, it calls ***`nx_tcp_socket_delete`*** to delete the socket.

## TCP Server Connection

The server side of a TCP connection is passive; i.e., the server waits for a client to initiate connection request. To accept a client connection, TCP must first be enabled on the IP instance by calling the service ***nx\_tcp\_enable***. Next, the application must create a TCP socket using the ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_create*** service.

The server socket must also be set up for listening for connection requests. This is achieved by using the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen*** service. This service places the server socket in the LISTEN state and binds the specified server port to the socket.

*i*

*To set a socket listen callback routine the application specifies the appropriate callback function for the ***tcp\_listen\_callback*** argument of the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen*** service. This application callback function is then executed by NetX whenever a new connection is requested on this server port. The processing in the callback is under application control.*

To accept client connection requests, the application calls the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept*** service. The server socket must either be in a LISTEN state or a SYN RECEIVED state (i.e., the server is in the LISTEN state and has received a SYN packet from a client requesting a connection) to call the accept service. A successful return status from ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept*** indicates the connection has been set up and the server socket is in the ESTABLISHED state.

After the server socket has a valid connection, additional client connection requests are queued up to the depth specified by the ***listen\_queue\_size***, passed into the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen*** service. In order to process subsequent connections on a server port, the application must call ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten*** with an available

socket (i.e., a socket in a CLOSED state). Note that the same server socket could be used if the previous connection associated with the socket is now finished and the socket is in the CLOSED state.

## TCP Server Disconnection

Closing the connection is accomplished by calling ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect***. If no suspension is specified, the server socket sends a RST packet to the client socket and places the socket in the CLOSED state. Otherwise, if a suspension is requested, the full TCP disconnect protocol is performed, as follows:

- If the client previously initiated a disconnect request (the server socket has already received a FIN packet, responded with an ACK, and is in the CLOSE WAIT state), NetX promotes the TCP socket state to the LAST ACK state and sends a FIN packet. It then waits for an ACK from the client before completing the disconnect and entering the CLOSED state.
- If on the other hand, the server is the first to initiate a disconnect request (the client has not disconnected and the socket is still in the ESTABLISHED state), NetX sends a FIN packet to initiate the disconnect and waits to receive a FIN and an ACK from the client before completing the disconnect and placing the socket in a CLOSED state.

If there are still packets on the socket transmit queue, NetX suspends for the specified timeout to allow those packets to be acknowledged. If the timeout expires, NetX flushes the transmit queue of the server socket.

After the disconnect processing is complete and the server socket is in the CLOSED state, the application must call the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept*** service to end the association of this socket with the

server port. Note this service must be called by the application even if ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect*** or ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept*** return an error status. After the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept*** returns, the socket can be used as a client or server socket, or even deleted if it is no longer needed. If accepting another client connection on the same server port is desired, the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten*** service should be called on this socket.

The following code segment illustrates the sequence of calls a typical TCP server uses:

```
/* Set up a previously created TCP socket to listen on
   port 12 */
nx_tcp_server_socket_listen()

/* Loop to make a (another) connection. */
while(1)
{
    /* Wait for a client socket connection request for
       100 ticks. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_accept();

    /* (Send and receive TCP messages with the TCP
       client) */

    /* Disconnect the server socket. */
    nx_tcp_socket_disconnect();

    /* Remove this server socket from listening on the
       port. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(&server_socket);

    /* Set up server socket to relisten on the same port
       for the next client. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten();
}
```

## MSS Validation

The Maximum Segment Size (MSS) is the maximum amount of bytes a TCP host can receive without being fragmented by the underlying IP layer. During TCP connection establishment phase, both ends exchanges its own TCP MSS value, so that the sender does not send a TCP data segment that is larger than the receiver's MSS. NetX TCP

module will optionally validate its peer's advertised MSS value before establishing a connection. By default NetX does not enable such a check. Applications wishing to perform MSS validation shall define ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_MSS\_CHECKING*** when building the NetX library, and the minimum value shall be defined in ***NX\_TCP\_MSS\_MINIMUM***. Incoming TCP connections with MSS values below ***NX\_TCP\_MSS\_MINIMUM*** are dropped.

## Stop Listening on a Server Port

If the application no longer wishes to listen for client connection requests on a server port that was previously specified by a call to the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen*** service, the application simply calls the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten*** service. This service places any socket waiting for a connection back in the CLOSED state and releases any queued client connection request packets.

## TCP Window Size

During both the setup and data transfer phases of the connection, each port reports the amount of data it can handle, which is called its window size. As data are received and processed, this window size is adjusted dynamically. In TCP, a sender can only send an amount of data that fits into the receiver's window. In essence, the window size provides flow control for data transfer in each direction of the connection.

## TCP Packet Send

Sending TCP data is easily accomplished by calling the ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_send*** function. If the size of the data being transmitted is larger than the MSS value of the socket or the current peer receive window size, whichever is smaller, TCP internal logic carves off the data that fits into min (MSS, peer receive Window) for transmission. This service then builds a TCP header in front of the packet (including the

checksum calculation). If the receiver's window size is not zero, the caller will send as much data as it can to fill up the receiver window size. If the receive window becomes zero, the caller may suspend and wait for the receiver's window size to increase enough for this packet to be sent. At any given time, multiple threads may suspend while trying to send data through the same socket.



*The TCP data residing in the NX\_PACKET structure should reside on a long-word boundary. In addition, there needs to be sufficient space between the prepend pointer and the data start pointer to place the TCP, IP, and physical media headers.*

## TCP Packet Retransmit

Previously transmitted TCP packets sent actually stored internally until an ACK is returned from the other side of the connection. If transmitted data is not acknowledged within the timeout period, the stored packet is re-sent and the next timeout period is set. When an ACK is received, all packets covered by the acknowledgement number in the internal transmit queue are finally released.



*Application shall not reuse the packet or alter the contents of the packet after nx\_tcp\_socket\_send() returns with NX\_SUCCESS. The transmitted packet is eventually released by NetX internal processing after the data is acknowledged by the other end.*

## TCP Keepalive

TCP Keepalive feature allows a socket to detect whether or not its peer disconnects without proper termination (for example, the peer crashed), or to prevent certain network monitoring facilities to terminate a connection for long periods of idle. TCP Keepalive works by periodically sending a TCP frame with no data, and the sequence number set to one less than the current sequence number. On receiving

such TCP Keepalive frame, the recipient, if still alive, responds with an ACK for its current sequence number. This completes the keepalive transaction.

By default the keepalive feature is not enabled. To use this feature, NetX library must be built with ***NX\_ENABLE\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE*** defined. The symbol ***NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_INITIAL*** specifies the number of seconds of inactivity before the keepalive frame is initiated.

## TCP Packet Receive

The TCP receive packet processing (called from the IP helper thread) is responsible for handling various connection and disconnection actions as well as transmit acknowledge processing. In addition, the TCP receive packet processing is responsible for placing packets with receive data on the appropriate TCP socket's receive queue or delivering the packet to the first suspended thread waiting for a packet.

## TCP Receive Notify

If the application thread needs to process received data from more than one socket, the ***nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_notify*** function should be used. This function registers a receive packet callback function for the socket. Whenever a packet is received on the socket, the callback function is executed.

The contents of the callback function are application-specific; however, the function would most likely contain logic to inform the processing thread that a packet is available on the corresponding socket.

## Thread Suspension

As mentioned previously, application threads can suspend while attempting to receive data from a particular TCP port. After a packet is received on that port, it is given to the first thread suspended and that



thread is then resumed. An optional timeout is available when suspending on a TCP receive packet, a feature available for most NetX services.

Thread suspension is also available for connection (both client and server), client binding, and disconnection services.

## TCP Socket Statistics and Errors

If enabled, the NetX TCP socket software keeps track of several statistics and errors that may be useful to the application. The following statistics and error reports are maintained for each IP/TCP instance:

- Total TCP Packets Sent
- Total TCP Bytes Sent
- Total TCP Packets Received
- Total TCP Bytes Received
- Total TCP Invalid Packets
- Total TCP Receive Packets Dropped
- Total TCP Receive Checksum Errors
- Total TCP Connections
- Total TCP Disconnections
- Total TCP Connections Dropped
- Total TCP Packet Retransmits
- TCP Socket Packets Sent
- TCP Socket Bytes Sent
- TCP Socket Packets Received
- TCP Socket Bytes Received
- TCP Socket Packet Retransmits
- TCP Socket Packets Queued
- TCP Socket Checksum Errors
- TCP Socket State
- TCP Socket Transmit Queue Depth
- TCP Socket Transmit Window Size
- TCP Socket Receive Window Size

All these statistics and error reports are available to the application with the ***`nx_tcp_info_get`*** service for total TCP statistics and the ***`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`*** service for TCP statistics per socket.

## **TCP Socket Control Block NX\_TCP\_SOCKET**

The characteristics of each TCP socket are found in the associated *NX\_TCP\_SOCKET* control block, which contains useful information such as the link to the IP data structure, the network connection interface, the bound port, and the receive packet queue. This structure is defined in the ***nx\_api.h*** file.

## Description of NetX Services

---

This chapter contains a description of all NetX services in alphabetic order. Service names are designed so all similar services are grouped together. For example, all ARP services are found at the beginning of this chapter.

*i* Note that a *BSD-Compatible Socket API* is available for legacy application code that cannot take full advantage of the high-performance NetX API. Refer to Appendix D for more information on the *BSD-Compatible Socket API*.

In the “Return Values” section of each description, values in **BOLD** are not affected by the `NX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING` option used to disable the API error checking, while values in non-bold are completely disabled. The “Allowed From” sections indicate from which each NetX service can be called.

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate` 114  
*Invalidate all dynamic entries in the ARP cache*

`nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set` 116  
*Set dynamic ARP entry*

`nx_arp_enable` 118  
*Enable Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)*

`nx_arp_gratuitous_send` 120  
*Send gratuitous ARP request*

`nx_arp_hardware_address_find` 122  
*Locate physical hardware address given an IP address*

`nx_arp_info_get` 124  
*Retrieve information about ARP activities*

`nx_arp_ip_address_find` 126  
*Locate IP address given a physical address*

`nx_arp_static_entries_delete` 128  
*Delete all static ARP entries*

`nx_arp_static_entry_create` 130  
*Create static IP to hardware mapping in ARP cache*

`nx_arp_static_entry_delete` 132  
*Delete static IP to hardware mapping in ARP cache*

`nx_icmp_enable` 134  
*Enable Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)*

`nx_icmp_info_get` 136  
*Retrieve information about ICMP activities*

`nx_icmp_ping` 138  
*Send ping request to specified IP address*

`nx_igmp_enable` 140  
*Enable Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)*

`nx_igmp_info_get` 142  
*Retrieve information about IGMP activities*

`nx_igmp_loopback_disable` 144  
*Disable IGMP loopback*

`nx_igmp_loopback_enable` 146  
*Enable IGMP loopback*

`nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join` 148  
*Join IP instance to specified multicast group via an interface*

`nx_igmp_multicast_join` 150  
*Join IP instance to specified multicast group*

`nx_igmp_multicast_leave` 152  
*Cause IP instance to leave specified multicast group*

`nx_ip_address_change_notify` 154  
*Notify application if IP address changes*

`nx_ip_address_get` 156  
*Retrieve IP address and network mask*

`nx_ip_address_set` 158  
*Set IP address and network mask*

`nx_ip_create` 160  
*Create an IP instance*

`nx_ip_delete` 162  
*Delete previously created IP instance*

`nx_ip_driver_direct_command` 164  
*Issue command to network driver*

`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command` 166  
*Issue command to network driver*

`nx_ip_forwarding_disable` 168  
*Disable IP packet forwarding*

nx\_ip\_forwarding\_enable 170  
     *Enable IP packet forwarding*  
 nx\_ip\_fragment\_disable 172  
     *Disable IP packet fragmenting*  
 nx\_ip\_fragment\_enable 174  
     *Enable IP packet fragmenting*  
 nx\_ip\_gateway\_address\_set 176  
     *Set Gateway IP address*  
 nx\_ip\_info\_get 178  
     *Retrieve information about IP activities*  
 nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_get 180  
     *Retrieve interface IP address*  
 nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_set 182  
     *Set interface IP address and network mask*  
 nx\_ip\_interface\_attach 184  
     *Attach network interface to IP instance*  
 nx\_ip\_interface\_info\_get 186  
     *Retrieve network interface parameters*  
 nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check 188  
     *Check status of an IP instance*  
 nx\_ip\_link\_status\_change\_notify\_set 190  
     *Set the link status change notify callback function*  
 nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_disable 192  
     *Disable raw packet sending/receiving*  
 nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_enable 194  
     *Enable raw packet processing*  
 nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_interface\_send 196  
     *Send raw IP packet through specified network interface*  
 nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_receive 198  
     *Receive raw IP packet*  
 nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_send 200  
     *Send raw IP packet*  
 nx\_ip\_static\_route\_add 202  
     *Add static route to the routing table*  
 nx\_ip\_static\_route\_delete 204  
     *Delete static route from routing table*  
 nx\_ip\_status\_check 206  
     *Check status of an IP instance*  
 nx\_packet\_allocate 208  
     *Allocate packet from specified pool*

`nx_packet_copy` 210  
*Copy packet*

`nx_packet_data_append` 212  
*Append data to end of packet*

`nx_packet_data_extract_offset` 214  
*Extract data from packet via an offset*

`nx_packet_data_retrieve` 216  
*Retrieve data from packet*

`nx_packet_length_get` 218  
*Get length of packet data*

`nx_packet_pool_create` 220  
*Create packet pool in specified memory area*

`nx_packet_pool_delete` 222  
*Delete previously created packet pool*

`nx_packet_pool_info_get` 224  
*Retrieve information about a packet pool*

`nx_packet_release` 226  
*Release previously allocated packet*

`nx_packet_transmit_release` 228  
*Release a transmitted packet*

`nx_rarp_disable` 230  
*Disable Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)*

`nx_rarp_enable` 232  
*Enable Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)*

`nx_rarp_info_get` 234  
*Retrieve information about RARP activities*

`nx_system_initialize` 236  
*Initialize NetX System*

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind` 238  
*Bind client TCP socket to TCP port*

`nx_tcp_client_socket_connect` 240  
*Connect client TCP socket*

`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get` 242  
*Get port number bound to client TCP socket*

`nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind` 244  
*Unbind TCP client socket from TCP port*

`nx_tcp_enable` 246  
*Enable TCP component of NetX*

`nx_tcp_free_port_find` 248  
*Find next available TCP port*

nx\_tcp\_info\_get 250  
*Retrieve information about TCP activities*  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept 254  
*Accept TCP connection*  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen 258  
*Enable listening for client connection on TCP port*  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten 262  
*Re-listen for client connection on TCP port*  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept 266  
*Remove socket association with listening port*  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten 270  
*Disable listening for client connection on TCP port*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available 274  
*Retrieves number of bytes available for retrieval*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_create 276  
*Create TCP client or server socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete 280  
*Delete TCP socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect 282  
*Disconnect client and server socket connections*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect\_complete\_notify 284  
*Install TCP disconnect complete notify callback function*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_establish\_notify 286  
*Set TCP establish notify callback function*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get 288  
*Retrieve information about TCP socket activities*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_get 292  
*Get MSS of socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_peer\_get 294  
*Get MSS of the peer TCP socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_set 296  
*Set MSS of socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_peer\_info\_get 298  
*Retrieve information about peer TCP socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive 300  
*Receive data from TCP socket*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_notify 302  
*Notify application of received packets*  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_send 304  
*Send data through a TCP socket*

`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait` 308  
*Wait for TCP socket to enter specific state*

`nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback` 310  
*Install callback for timed wait state*

`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure` 312  
*Configure socket's transmit parameters*

`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set` 314  
*Notify application of window size updates*

`nx_udp_enable` 316  
*Enable UDP component of NetX*

`nx_udp_free_port_find` 318  
*Find next available UDP port*

`nx_udp_info_get` 320  
*Retrieve information about UDP activities*

`nx_udp_packet_info_extract` 322  
*Extract network parameters from UDP packet*

`nx_udp_socket_bind` 324  
*Bind UDP socket to UDP port*

`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available` 326  
*Retrieves number of bytes available for retrieval*

`nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable` 328  
*Disable checksum for UDP socket*

`nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable` 330  
*Enable checksum for UDP socket*

`nx_udp_socket_create` 332  
*Create UDP socket*

`nx_udp_socket_delete` 334  
*Delete UDP socket*

`nx_udp_socket_info_get` 336  
*Retrieve information about UDP socket activities*

`nx_udp_socket_port_get` 338  
*Pick up port number bound to UDP socket*

`nx_udp_socket_receive` 340  
*Receive datagram from UDP socket*

`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify` 342  
*Notify application of each received packet*

`nx_udp_socket_send` 344  
*Send a UDP Datagram*

`nx_udp_socket_interface_send` 346  
*Send datagram through UDP socket*



`nx_udp_socket_unbind` 348

*Unbind UDP socket from UDP port*

`nx_udp_source_extract` 350

*Extract IP and sending port from UDP datagram*



**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Invalidate all dynamic entries in the ARP cache. */  
status = nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate(&ip_0);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the dynamic ARP entries were  
   successfully invalidated. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set`, `nx_arp_enable`, `nx_arp_gratuitous_send`,  
`nx_arp_hardware_address_find`, `nx_arp_info_get`,  
`nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entries_delete`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_create`, `nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

# nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entry\_set

Set dynamic ARP entry

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                              ULONG ip_address,
                              ULONG physical_msw,
                              ULONG physical_lsw);
```

## Description

This service allocates a dynamic entry from the ARP cache and sets up the specified IP to physical address mapping. If a zero physical address is specified, an actual ARP request is sent to the network in order to have the physical address resolved. Also note that this entry will be removed if ARP aging is active or if the ARP cache is exhausted and this is the least recently used ARP entry.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	IP address to map.
physical_msw	Top 16 bits (47-32) of the physical address.
physical_lsw	Lower 32 bits (31-0) of the physical address.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful ARP dynamic entry set.
<b>NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES</b>	(0x17)	No more ARP entries are available in the ARP cache.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP instance pointer.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Setup a dynamic ARP entry on the previously created IP
   Instance 0. */
status = nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,4),
                                   0x1022, 0x1234);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, there is now a dynamic mapping between
   the IP address of 1.2.3.4 and the physical hardware address of
   10:22:00:00:12:34. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate`, `nx_arp_enable`,  
`nx_arp_gratuitous_send`, `nx_arp_hardware_address_find`,  
`nx_arp_info_get`, `nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entries_delete`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_create`, `nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

# nx\_arp\_enable

## Enable Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr, VOID *arp_cache_memory,
                  ULONG arp_cache_size);
```

### Description

This service initializes the ARP component of NetX for the specific IP instance. ARP initialization includes setting up the ARP cache and various ARP processing routines necessary for sending and receiving ARP messages.

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
arp_cache_memory	Pointer to memory area to place ARP cache.
arp_cache_size	Each ARP entry is 52 bytes, the total number of ARP entries is, therefore, the size divided by 52.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful ARP enable.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or cache memory pointer.
<b>NX_SIZE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	User supplied ARP cache memory is too small.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_ALREADY_ENABLED</b>	(0x15)	This component has already been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Enable ARP and supply 1024 bytes of ARP cache memory for
   previously created IP Instance ip_0. */
status = nx_arp_enable(&ip_0, (void *) pointer, 1024);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, ARP was successfully enabled for this IP
   instance.*/
```

## See Also

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate`, `nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set`,  
`nx_arp_gratuitous_send`, `nx_arp_hardware_address_find`,  
`nx_arp_info_get`, `nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entries_delete`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_create`, `nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

# nx\_arp\_gratuitous\_send

Send gratuitous ARP request

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_gratuitous_send(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                           VOID (*response_handler)
                           (NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                            NX_PACKET *packet_ptr));
```

## Description

This service goes through all the physical interfaces to transmit gratuitous ARP requests as long as the interface IP address is valid. If an ARP response is subsequently received, the supplied response handler is called to process the response to the gratuitous ARP.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
response_handler	Pointer to response handling function. If NX_NULL is supplied, responses are ignored.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful gratuitous ARP send.
NX_NO_PACKET	(0x01)	No packet available.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	ARP is not enabled.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Current IP address is invalid.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Caller is not a thread.



**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Send gratuitous ARP without any response handler. */  
status = nx_arp_gratuitous_send(&ip_0, NX_NULL);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the gratuitous ARP was successfully  
sent. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate`, `nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set`,  
`nx_arp_enable`, `nx_arp_hardware_address_find`, `nx_arp_info_get`,  
`nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entries_delete`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_create`, `nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

# nx\_arp\_hardware\_address\_find

Locate physical hardware address given an IP address

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_hardware_address_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                  ULONG ip_address,
                                  ULONG *physical_msw,
                                  ULONG *physical_lsw);
```

## Description

This service attempts to find a physical hardware address in the ARP cache that is associated with the supplied IP address.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	IP address to search for.
physical_msw	Pointer to the variable for returning the top 16 bits (47-32) of the physical address.
physical_lsw	Pointer to the variable for returning the lower 32 bits (31-0) of the physical address.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful ARP hardware address find.
NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND	(0x16)	Mapping was not found in the ARP cache.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP or memory pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Search for the hardware address associated with the IP address of
   1.2.3.4 in the ARP cache of the previously created IP
   Instance 0. */
status = nx_arp_hardware_address_find(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,4),
                                     &physical_msw,
                                     &physical_lsw);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the variables physical_msw and
   physical_lsw contain the hardware address.*/
```

**See Also**

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate`, `nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set`,  
`nx_arp_enable`, `nx_arp_gratuitous_send`, `nx_arp_info_get`,  
`nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entries_delete`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_create`, `nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

## nx\_arp\_info\_get

Retrieve information about ARP activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                    ULONG *arp_requests_sent,
                    ULONG *arp_requests_received,
                    ULONG *arp_responses_sent,
                    ULONG *arp_responses_received,
                    ULONG *arp_dynamic_entries,
                    ULONG *arp_static_entries,
                    ULONG *arp_aged_entries,
                    ULONG *arp_invalid_messages);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about ARP activities for the associated IP instance.

*i*

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
arp_requests_sent	Pointer to destination for the total ARP requests sent from this IP instance.
arp_requests_received	Pointer to destination for the total ARP requests received from the network.
arp_responses_sent	Pointer to destination for the total ARP responses sent from this IP instance.
arp_responses_received	Pointer to the destination for the total ARP responses received from the network.
arp_dynamic_entries	Pointer to the destination for the current number of dynamic ARP entries.
arp_static_entries	Pointer to the destination for the current number of static ARP entries.

arp_aged_entries	Pointer to the destination of the total number of ARP entries that have aged and became invalid.
arp_invalid_messages	Pointer to the destination of the total invalid ARP messages received.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful ARP information retrieval.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Pickup ARP information for ip_0. */
status = nx_arp_info_get(&ip_0, &arp_requests_sent,
                        &arp_requests_received,
                        &arp_responses_sent,
                        &arp_responses_received,
                        &arp_dynamic_entries,
                        &arp_static_entries,
                        &arp_aged_entries,
                        &arp_invalid_messages);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the ARP information has been stored in
the supplied variables. */
```

## See Also

nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entries\_invalidate, nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entry\_set,  
 nx\_arp\_enable, nx\_arp\_gratuitous\_send,  
 nx\_arp\_hardware\_address\_find, nx\_arp\_ip\_address\_find,  
 nx\_arp\_static\_entries\_delete, nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_create,  
 nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_delete

# nx\_arp\_ip\_address\_find

Locate IP address given a physical address

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_ip_address_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG *ip_address,
                             ULONG physical_msw, ULONG physical_lsw);
```

## Description

This service attempts to find an IP address in the ARP cache that is associated with the supplied physical address.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	Pointer to return IP address, if one is found that has been mapped.
physical_msw	Top 16 bits (47-32) of the physical address to search for.
physical_lsw	Lower 32 bits (31-0) of the physical address to search for.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful ARP IP address find
<b>NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND</b>	(0x16)	Mapping was not found in the ARP cache.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or memory pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
<b>NX_INVALID_PARAMETERS</b>	(0x4D)	Physical_msw and physical_lsw are both 0.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Search for the IP address associated with the hardware address of
   0x0:0x01234 in the ARP cache of the previously created IP
   Instance ip_0. */
status = nx_arp_ip_address_find(&ip_0, &ip_address, 0x0, 0x1234);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the variables ip_address contains the
   associated IP address. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entries\_invalidate, nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entry\_set,  
nx\_arp\_enable, nx\_arp\_gratuitous\_send,  
nx\_arp\_hardware\_address\_find, nx\_arp\_info\_get,  
nx\_arp\_static\_entries\_delete, nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_create,  
nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_delete

# nx\_arp\_static\_entries\_delete

Delete all static ARP entries

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_static_entries_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes all static entries in the ARP cache.

## Parameters

ip\_ptr                                      Pointer to previously created IP instance.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Static entries are deleted.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid <i>ip_ptr</i> pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.



## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Delete all the static ARP entries for IP Instance 0, assuming
   "ip_0" is the NX_IP structure for IP Instance 0. */
status = nx_arp_static_entries_delete(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS all static ARP entries in the ARP cache
   have been deleted. */
```

## See Also

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate`, `nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set`,  
`nx_arp_enable`, `nx_arp_gratuitous_send`,  
`nx_arp_hardware_address_find`, `nx_arp_info_get`,  
`nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entry_create`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

# nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_create

Create static IP to hardware mapping in ARP cache

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_static_entry_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                ULONG ip_address,
                                ULONG physical_msw,
                                ULONG physical_lsw);
```

## Description

This service creates a static IP-to-physical address mapping in the ARP cache for the specified IP instance. Static ARP entries are not subject to ARP periodic updates.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	IP address to map.
physical_msw	Top 16 bits (47-32) of the physical address to map.
physical_lsw	Lower 32 bits (31-0) of the physical address to map.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful ARP static entry create.
NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES	(0x17)	No more ARP entries are available in the ARP cache.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
NX_INVALID_PARAMETERS	(0x4D)	Physical_msw and physical_lsw are both 0.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Create a static ARP entry on the previously created IP
   Instance 0. */
status = nx_arp_static_entry_create(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,4),
                                     0x0, 0x1234);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, there is now a static mapping between
   the IP address of 1.2.3.4 and the physical hardware address of
   00:00:00:00:12:34. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate`, `nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set`,  
`nx_arp_enable`, `nx_arp_gratuitous_send`,  
`nx_arp_hardware_address_find`, `nx_arp_info_get`,  
`nx_arp_ip_address_find`, `nx_arp_static_entries_delete`,  
`nx_arp_static_entry_delete`

# nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_delete

Delete static IP to hardware mapping in ARP cache

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_arp_static_entry_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                ULONG ip_address,
                                ULONG physical_msw,
                                ULONG physical_lsw);
```

## Description

This service finds and deletes a previously created static IP-to-physical address mapping in the ARP cache for the specified IP instance.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	IP address that was mapped statically.
physical_msw	Top 16 bits (47 - 32) of the physical address that was mapped statically.
physical_lsw	Lower 32 bits (31 - 0) of the physical address that was mapped statically.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful ARP static entry delete.
NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND	(0x16)	Static ARP entry was not found in the ARP cache.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
NX_INVALID_PARAMETERS	(0x4D)	Physical_msw and physical_lsw are both 0.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Delete a static ARP entry on the previously created IP
   instance ip_0. */
status = nx_arp_static_entry_delete(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,4),
                                     0x0, 0x1234);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the previously created static ARP entry
   was successfully deleted. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entries\_invalidate, nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entry\_set,  
nx\_arp\_enable, nx\_arp\_gratuitous\_send,  
nx\_arp\_hardware\_address\_find, nx\_arp\_info\_get,  
nx\_arp\_ip\_address\_find, nx\_arp\_static\_entries\_delete,  
nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_create



## Example

```
/* Enable ICMP on the previously created IP Instance ip_0. */  
status = nx_icmp_enable(&ip_0);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, ICMP is enabled. */
```

## See Also

`nx_icmp_info_get`, `nx_icmp_ping`

## nx\_icmp\_info\_get

Retrieve information about ICMP activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_icmp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                     ULONG *pings_sent,
                     ULONG *ping_timeouts,
                     ULONG *ping_threads_suspended,
                     ULONG *ping_responses_received,
                     ULONG *icmp_checksum_errors,
                     ULONG *icmp_unhandled_messages);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about ICMP activities for the specified IP instance.

*i* If a destination pointer is `NX_NULL`, that particular information is not returned to the caller.

### Parameters

<code>ip_ptr</code>	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
<code>pings_sent</code>	Pointer to destination for the total number of pings sent.
<code>ping_timeouts</code>	Pointer to destination for the total number of ping timeouts.
<code>ping_threads_suspended</code>	Pointer to destination of the total number of threads suspended on ping requests.
<code>ping_responses_received</code>	Pointer to destination of the total number of ping responses received.
<code>icmp_checksum_errors</code>	Pointer to destination of the total number of ICMP checksum errors.
<code>icmp_unhandled_messages</code>	Pointer to destination of the total number of un-handled ICMP messages.



## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful ICMP information retrieval.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Retrieve ICMP information from previously created IP
   instance ip_0. */
status = nx_icmp_info_get(&ip_0, &pings_sent, &ping_timeouts,
                        &ping_threads_suspended,
                        &ping_responses_received,
                        &icmp_checksum_errors,
                        &icmp_unhandled_messages);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, ICMP information was retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_icmp_enable`, `nx_icmp_ping`

# nx\_icmp\_ping


Send ping request to specified IP address

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_icmp_ping(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                  ULONG ip_address,
                  CHAR *data, ULONG data_size,
                  NX_PACKET **response_ptr,
                  ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service sends a ping request to the specified IP address and waits for the specified amount of time for a ping response message. If no response is received, an error is returned. Otherwise, the entire response message is returned in the variable pointed to by response\_ptr.



*If NX\_SUCCESS is returned, the application is responsible for releasing the received packet after it is no longer needed.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	IP address, in host byte order, to ping.
data	Pointer to data area for ping message.
data_size	Number of bytes in the ping data
response_ptr	Pointer to packet pointer to return the ping response message in.
wait_option	Defines how long to wait for a ping response. wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful ping. Response message pointer was placed in
------------	--------	---

		the variable pointed to by response_ptr.
<b>NX_NO_PACKET</b>	(0x01)	Unable to allocate a ping request packet.
<b>NX_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x03)	Specified data area exceeds the default packet size for this IP instance.
<b>NX_NO_RESPONSE</b>	(0x29)	Requested IP did not respond.
<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or response pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Issue a ping to IP address 1.2.3.5 from the previously created IP
   Instance ip_0. */
status = nx_icmp_ping(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,5), "abcd", 4,
                     &response_ptr, 10);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, a ping response was received from IP
   address 1.2.3.5 and the response packet is contained in the
   packet pointed to by response_ptr. It should have the same "abcd"
   four bytes of data. */
```

## See Also

`nx_icmp_enable`, `nx_icmp_info_get`



## Example

```
/* Enable IGMP on the previously created IP Instance ip_0. */  
status = nx_igmp_enable(&ip_0);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, IGMP is enabled. */
```

## See Also

`nx_igmp_info_get`, `nx_igmp_loopback_disable`,  
`nx_igmp_loopback_enable`, `nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_join`, `nx_igmp_multicast_leave`

# nx\_igmp\_info\_get

Retrieve information about IGMP activities

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_igmp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                      ULONG *igmp_reports_sent,
                      ULONG *igmp_queries_received,
                      ULONG *igmp_checksum_errors,
                      ULONG *current_groups_joined);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about IGMP activities for the specified IP instance.

*i* If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
igmp_reports_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of ICMP reports sent.
igmp_queries_received	Pointer to destination for the total number of queries received by multicast router.
igmp_checksum_errors	Pointer to destination of the total number of IGMP checksum errors on receive packets.
current_groups_joined	Pointer to destination of the current number of groups joined through this IP instance.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful IGMP information retrieval.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Retrieve IGMP information from previously created IP Instance
ip_0. */
status = nx_igmp_info_get(&ip_0, &igmp_reports_sent,
                          &igmp_queries_received,
                          &igmp_checksum_errors,
                          &current_groups_joined);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, IGMP information was retrieved. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_igmp\_enable, nx\_igmp\_loopback\_disable,  
 nx\_igmp\_loopback\_enable, nx\_igmp\_multicast\_interface\_join,  
 nx\_igmp\_multicast\_join, nx\_igmp\_multicast\_leave

# nx\_igmp\_loopback\_disable

Disable IGMP loopback

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_igmp_loopback_disable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);
```

## Description

This service disables IGMP loopback for all subsequent multicast groups joined.

## Parameters

ip\_ptr                                      Pointer to previously created IP instance.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful IGMP loopback disable.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	IGMP is not enabled.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Caller is not a thread or initialization.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
/* Disable IGMP loopback for all subsequent multicast groups
   joined. */
status = nx_igmp_loopback_disable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS IGMP loopback is disabled. */
```

## See Also

`nx_igmp_enable`, `nx_igmp_info_get`, `nx_igmp_loopback_enable`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join`, `nx_igmp_multicast_join`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_leave`

# nx\_igmp\_loopback\_enable

Enable IGMP loopback

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_igmp_loopback_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);
```

## Description

This service enables IGMP loopback for all subsequent multicast groups joined.

## Parameters

ip\_ptr                                      Pointer to previously created IP instance.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful IGMP loopback disable.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	IGMP is not enabled.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Caller is not a thread or initialization.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Enable IGMP loopback for all subsequent multicast
   groups joined. */
status = nx_igmp_loopback_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS IGMP loopback is enabled. */
```

## See Also

`nx_igmp_enable`, `nx_igmp_info_get`, `nx_igmp_loopback_disable`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join`, `nx_igmp_multicast_join`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_leave`

## nx\_igmp\_multicast\_interface\_join

Join IP instance to specified multicast group via an interface

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                       ULONG group_address,
                                       UINT interface_index)
```

### Description

This service joins an IP instance to the specified multicast group via a specified network interface. An internal counter is maintained to keep track of the number of times the same group has been joined. After joining the multicast group, the IGMP component will allow reception of IP packets with this group address via the specified network interface and also report to routers that this IP is a member of this multicast group. The IGMP membership join, report, and leave messages are also sent via the specified network interface.

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
group_address	Class D IP multicast group address to join in host byte order.
interface_index	Index of the Interface attached to the NetX instance.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful multicast group join.
<b>NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES</b>	(0x17)	No more multicast groups can be joined, maximum exceeded.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_INVALID_INTERFACE</b>	(0x4C)	Device index points to an invalid network interface.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Multicast group address provided is not a valid class D address.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	IP multicast support is not enabled.
----------------	--------	--------------------------------------

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Previously created IP Instance joins the multicast group
   244.0.0.200, via the interface at index 1 in the IP interface
   list. */
#define INTERFACE_INDEX 1
status = nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join
                                   (&ip, IP_ADDRESS(244,0,0,200),
                                   INTERFACE_INDEX);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the IP instance has successfully joined
   the multicast group. */

```

**See Also**

nx\_igmp\_enable, nx\_igmp\_info\_get, nx\_igmp\_loopback\_disable,  
 nx\_igmp\_loopback\_enable, nx\_igmp\_multicast\_join,  
 nx\_igmp\_multicast\_leave

## nx\_igmp\_multicast\_join

Join IP instance to specified multicast group

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_igmp_multicast_join(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG group_address);
```

### Description

This service joins an IP instance to the specified multicast group. An internal counter is maintained to keep track of the number of times the same group has been joined. The driver is commanded to send an IGMP report if this is the first join request out on the network indicating the host's intention to join the group. After joining, the IGMP component will allow reception of IP packets with this group address and report to routers that this IP is a member of this multicast group.

*i*

*To join a multicast group on a non-primary device, use the service **nx\_igmp\_multicast\_interface\_join**.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
group_address	Class D IP multicast group address to join.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful multicast group join.
<b>NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES</b>	(0x17)	No more multicast groups can be joined, maximum exceeded.
<b>NX_INVALID_INTERFACE</b>	(0x4C)	Device index points to an invalid network interface.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP group address.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Previously created IP Instance ip_0 joins the multicast group
   224.0.0.200. */
status = nx_igmp_multicast_join(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(224,0,0,200));

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, this IP instance has successfully
   joined the multicast group 224.0.0.200. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_igmp_enable`, `nx_igmp_info_get`, `nx_igmp_loopback_disable`,  
`nx_igmp_loopback_enable`, `nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_leave`

# nx\_igmp\_multicast\_leave

Cause IP instance to leave specified multicast group

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_igmp_multicast_leave(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG group_address);
```

## Description

This service causes an IP instance to leave the specified multicast group, if the number of leave requests matches the number of join requests. Otherwise, the internal join count is simply decremented.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
group_address	Multicast group to leave.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful multicast group join.
NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND	(0x16)	Previous join request was not found.
NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	(0x4C)	Device index points to an invalid network interface.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Invalid IP group address.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
/* Cause IP instance to leave the multicast group 224.0.0.200. */
status = nx_igmp_multicast_leave(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(224,0,0,200));

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, this IP instance has successfully left
the multicast group 224.0.0.200. */
```

## See Also

`nx_igmp_enable`, `nx_igmp_info_get`, `nx_igmp_loopback_disable`,  
`nx_igmp_loopback_enable`, `nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join`,  
`nx_igmp_multicast_join`

# nx\_ip\_address\_change\_notify

Notify application if IP address changes

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_address_change_notify(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                VOID(*change_notify)(NX_IP *,
                                VOID *),VOID *additional_info);
```

## Description

This service registers an application notification function that is called whenever the IP address is changed.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
change_notify	Pointer to IP change notification function. If this parameter is NX_NULL, IP address change notification is disabled.
additional_info	Pointer to optional additional information that is also supplied to the notification function when the IP address is changed.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful IP address change notification.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Register the function "my_ip_changed" to be called whenever the
   IP address is changed. */
status = nx_ip_address_change_notify(&ip_0, my_ip_changed,
                                     NX_NULL);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the "my_ip_changed" function will be
   called whenever the IP address changes. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`, `nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`,  
`nx_ip_driver_direct_command`, `nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_disable`, `nx_ip_forwarding_enable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_disable`, `nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`

# nx\_ip\_address\_get

Retrieve IP address and network mask

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_address_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                      ULONG *ip_address,
                      ULONG *network_mask);
```

## Description

This service retrieves IP address and its subnet mask of the primary network interface.

***i** To obtain information of the secondary device, use the service **nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_get**.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	Pointer to destination for IP address.
network_mask	Pointer to destination for network mask.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP address get.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or return variable pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Get the IP address and network mask from the previously created
   IP Instance ip_0. */
status = nx_ip_address_get(&ip_0, &ip_address, &network_mask);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the variables ip_address and
   network_mask contain the IP and network mask respectively. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_set`, `nx_ip_create`,  
`nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_status_check`,  
`nx_system_initialize`

# nx\_ip\_address\_set

Set IP address and network mask

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_address_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                      ULONG ip_address,
                      ULONG network_mask);
```

## Description

This service sets IP address and network mask for the primary network interface.

***i** To set IP address and network mask for the secondary device, use the service **nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_set**.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	New IP address.
network_mask	New network mask.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP address set.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Set the IP address and network mask to 1.2.3.4 and 0xFFFFFFFF00 for
   the previously created IP Instance ip_0. */
status = nx_ip_address_set(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,4),
                           0xFFFFFFFF00UL);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the IP instance now has an IP address of
   1.2.3.4 and a network mask of 0xFFFFFFFF00. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_create`,  
`nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_status_check`,  
`nx_system_initialize`

# nx\_ip\_create

## Create an IP instance

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr, CHAR *name, ULONG ip_address,
                  ULONG network_mask, NX_PACKET_POOL *default_pool,
                  VOID (*ip_network_driver)(NX_IP_DRIVER *),
                  VOID *memory_ptr, ULONG memory_size,
                  UINT priority);
```

### Description

This service creates an IP instance with the user supplied IP address and network driver. In addition, the application must supply a previously created packet pool for the IP instance to use for internal packet allocation. Note that the supplied application network driver is not called until this IP's thread executes.

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to control block to create a new IP instance.
name	Name of this new IP instance.
ip_address	IP address for this new IP instance.
network_mask	Mask to delineate the network portion of the IP address for sub-netting and super-netting uses.
default_pool	Pointer to control block of previously created NetX packet pool.
ip_network_driver	User-supplied network driver used to send and receive IP packets.
memory_ptr	Pointer to memory area for the IP helper thread's stack area.
memory_size	Number of bytes in the memory area for the IP helper thread's stack.
priority	Priority of IP helper thread.

### Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful IP instance creation.
------------	--------	----------------------------------



<b>NX_NOT_IMPLEMENTED</b>	(0x4A)	NetX library is configured incorrectly.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP, network driver function pointer, packet pool, or memory pointer.
<b>NX_SIZE_ERROR</b>	(0x09)	The supplied stack size is too small.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	The supplied IP address is invalid.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	The supplied IP thread priority is invalid.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
/* Create an IP instance with an IP address of 1.2.3.4 and a network
mask of 0xFFFFFFFFUL. The "ethernet_driver" specifies the entry
point of the application specific network driver and the
"stack_memory_ptr" specifies the start of a 1024 byte memory
area that is used for this IP instance's helper thread. */
status = nx_ip_create(&ip_0, "NetX IP Instance ip_0",
                     IP_ADDRESS(1, 2, 3, 4),
                     0xFFFFFFFFUL, &pool_0, ethernet_driver,
                     stack_memory_ptr, 1024, 1);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the IP instance has been created. */
```

### See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_status_check`,  
`nx_system_initialize`



## Example

```
/* Delete a previously created IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_delete(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the IP instance has been deleted. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_status_check`,  
`nx_system_initialize`

# nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command

Issue command to network driver

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_driver_direct_command(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                UINT command,
                                ULONG *return_value_ptr);
```

## Description

This service provides a direct interface to the application's primary network interface driver specified during the **nx\_ip\_create** call. Application-specific commands can be used providing their numeric value is greater than or equal to NX\_LINK\_USER\_COMMAND.

*To issue command for the secondary device, use the **nx\_ip\_driver\_interface\_direct\_command** service.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
command	Numeric command code. Standard commands are defined as follows: <div><div>NX_LINK_GET_STATUS(10)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_SPEED(11)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_DUPLEX_TYPE(12)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_ERROR_COUNT(13)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_RX_COUNT(14)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_TX_COUNT(15)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_ALLOC_ERRORS(16)</div><div>NX_LINK_USER_COMMAND(50)</div></div>
return_value_ptr	Pointer to return variable in the caller.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful network driver direct command.
NX_UNHANDLED_COMMAND	(0x44)	Unhandled or unimplemented network driver command.

NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP or return value pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	(0x4C)	Invalid interface index.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Make a direct call to the application-specific network driver
   for the previously created IP instance. For this example, the
   network driver is interrogated for the link status. */
status = nx_ip_driver_direct_command(&ip_0, NX_LINK_GET_STATUS,
                                     &link_status);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the link_status variable contains a
   NX_TRUE or NX_FALSE value representing the status of the
   physical link. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_disable`, `nx_ip_forwarding_enable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_disable`, `nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`

# nx\_ip\_driver\_interface\_direct\_command

Issue command to network driver

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                           UINT command,
                                           UINT interface_index,
                                           ULONG *return_value_ptr);
```

## Description

This service provides a direct command to the application's network device driver in the IP instance. Application-specific commands can be used providing their numeric value is greater than or equal to *NX\_LINK\_USER\_COMMAND*.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
command	Numeric command code. Standard commands are defined as follows: <div><div>NX_LINK_GET_STATUS(10)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_SPEED(11)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_DUPLEX_TYPE(12)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_ERROR_COUNT(13)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_RX_COUNT(14)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_TX_COUNT(15)</div><div>NX_LINK_GET_ALLOC_ERRORS(16)</div><div>NX_LINK_USER_COMMAND(50)</div></div>
interface_index	Index of the network interface the command should be sent to.
return_value_ptr	Pointer to return variable in the caller.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful network driver direct command.
NX_UNHANDLED_COMMAND	(0x44)	Unhandled or unimplemented network driver command.
NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	(0x4C)	Invalid interface index

NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP or return value pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Make a direct call to the application-specific network driver
   for the previously created IP instance. For this example, the
   network driver is interrogated for the link status. */

/* Set the interface index to the primary device. */
UINT interface_index = 0;

status = nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command(&ip_0,
                                              NX_LINK_GET_STATUS,
                                              interface_index,
                                              &link_status);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the link_status variable contains a
   NX_TRUE or NX_FALSE value representing the status of the
   physical link. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_disable`, `nx_ip_forwarding_enable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_disable`, `nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`





## Example

```
/* Disable IP forwarding on this IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_forwarding_disable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, IP forwarding has been disabled on the
   previously created IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_enable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_disable`, `nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`



## Example

```
/* Enable IP forwarding on this IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_forwarding_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, IP forwarding has been enabled on the
   previously created IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_disable`, `nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`



## Example

```
/* Disable IP fragmenting on this IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_fragment_disable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, disables IP fragmenting on the
   previously created IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`



## Example

```
/* Enable IP fragmenting on this IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_fragment_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, IP fragmenting has been enabled on the
   previously created IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`, `nx_ip_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`

# **nx\_ip\_gateway\_address\_set**

Set Gateway IP address

## **Prototype**

```
UINT nx_ip_gateway_address_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG ip_address);
```

## **Description**

This service sets the IP gateway IP address. All out-of-network traffic are routed to this gateway for transmission. The gateway must be directly accessible through one of the network interfaces.

## **Parameters**

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_address	IP address of the gateway.

## **Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful Gateway IP address set.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP instance pointer.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## **Allowed From**

Initialization, thread

## **Preemption Possible**

No



## Example

```
/* Setup the Gateway address for previously created IP
   Instance ip_0. */
status = nx_ip_gateway_address_set(&ip_0, IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,99));

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, all out-of-network send requests are
   routed to 1.2.3.99. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_static_route_add`, `nx_ip_static_route_delete`

## nx\_ip\_info\_get

Retrieve information about IP activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                   ULONG *ip_total_packets_sent,
                   ULONG *ip_total_bytes_sent,
                   ULONG *ip_total_packets_received,
                   ULONG *ip_total_bytes_received,
                   ULONG *ip_invalid_packets,
                   ULONG *ip_receive_packets_dropped,
                   ULONG *ip_receive_checksum_errors,
                   ULONG *ip_send_packets_dropped,
                   ULONG *ip_total_fragments_sent,
                   ULONG *ip_total_fragments_received);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about IP activities for the specified IP instance.

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
ip_total_packets_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of IP packets sent.
ip_total_bytes_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of bytes sent.
ip_total_packets_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of IP receive packets.
ip_total_bytes_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of IP bytes received.
ip_invalid_packets	Pointer to destination of the total number of invalid IP packets.
ip_receive_packets_dropped	Pointer to destination of the total number of receive packets dropped.
ip_receive_checksum_errors	Pointer to destination of the total number of checksum errors in receive packets.
ip_send_packets_dropped	Pointer to destination of the total number of send packets dropped.

<code>ip_total_fragments_sent</code>	Pointer to destination of the total number of fragments sent.
<code>ip_total_fragments_received</code>	Pointer to destination of the total number of fragments received.

## Return Values

<code>NX_SUCCESS</code>	(0x00)	Successful IP information retrieval.
<code>NX_CALLER_ERROR</code>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<code>NX_PTR_ERROR</code>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Retrieve IP information from previously created IP
   Instance 0. */
status = nx_ip_info_get(&ip_0,
                        &ip_total_packets_sent,
                        &ip_total_bytes_sent,
                        &ip_total_packets_received,
                        &ip_total_bytes_received,
                        &ip_invalid_packets,
                        &ip_receive_packets_dropped,
                        &ip_receive_checksum_errors,
                        &ip_send_packets_dropped,
                        &ip_total_fragments_sent,
                        &ip_total_fragments_received);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, IP information was retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_status_check`, `nx_system_initialize`

# nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_get


Retrieve interface IP address

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_interface_address_get (NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                  UINT   interface_index,
                                  ULONG  *ip_address,
                                  ULONG  *network_mask)
```

## Description

This service retrieves the IP address of a specified network interface.



*The specified device, if not the primary device, must be previously attached to the IP instance.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
interface_index	Interface index, the same value as the index to the network interface attached to the IP instance.
ip_address	Pointer to destination for the device interface IP address.
network_mask	Pointer to destination for the device interface network mask.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP address get.
<b>NX_INVALID_INTERFACE</b>	(0x4C)	Specified network interface is invalid.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
#define INTERFACE_INDEX 1
/* Get device IP address and network mask for the specified
   interface index 1 in IP instance list of interfaces). */
status = nx_ip_interface_address_get(ip_ptr, INTERFACE_INDEX,
                                     &ip_address,
                                     &network_mask);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the interface address was successfully
   retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_interface_address_set`, `nx_ip_interface_attach`,  
`nx_ip_interface_info_get`, `nx_ip_interface_status_check`,  
`nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set`

# nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_set

Set interface IP address and network mask

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_interface_address_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                UINT interface_index,
                                ULONG ip_address,
                                ULONG network_mask)
```

## Description

This service sets the IP address and network mask for the specified IP interface.



*The specified interface must be previously attached to the IP instance.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
interface_index	Index of the interface attached to the NetX instance.
ip_address	New network interface IP address.
network_mask	New interface network mask.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP address set.
<b>NX_INVALID_INTERFACE</b>	(0x4C)	Specified network interface is invalid.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pointers.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP address

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
#define INTERFACE_INDEX 1
/* Set device IP address and network mask for the specified
   interface index 1 in IP instance list of interfaces). */
status = nx_ip_interface_address_set(ip_ptr, INTERFACE_INDEX,
                                     ip_address,
                                     network_mask);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the interface IP address and mask was
   successfully set. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_interface_address_get`, `nx_ip_interface_attach`,  
`nx_ip_interface_info_get`, `nx_ip_interface_status_check`,  
`nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set`

## nx\_ip\_interface\_attach

Attach network interface to IP instance

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_interface_attach(NX_IP*ip_ptr, CHAR*interface_name,
                           ULONG ip_address,
                           ULONG network_mask,
                           VOID(*ip_link_driver)
                           (struct NX_IP_DRIVER_STRUCT *));
```

### Description

This service adds a physical network interface to the IP interface. Note the IP instance is created with the primary interface so each additional interface is secondary to the primary interface. The total number of network interfaces attached to the IP instance (including the primary interface) cannot exceed **NX\_MAX\_PHYSICAL\_INTERFACES**.

If the IP thread has not been running yet, the secondary interfaces will be initialized as part of the IP thread startup process that initializes all physical interfaces.

If the IP thread is not running yet, the secondary interface is initialized as part of the **nx\_ip\_interface\_attach** service.



*ip\_ptr must point to a valid NetX IP structure.*

***NX\_MAX\_PHYSICAL\_INTERFACES** must be configured for the number of network interfaces for the IP instance. The default value is one.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
interface_name	Pointer to interface name string.
ip_address	Device IP address in host byte order.
network_mask	Device network mask in host byte order.
ip_link_driver	Ethernet driver for the interface.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Entry is added to static routing table.
-------------------	--------	---



<b>NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES</b>	(0x17)	Max number of interfaces. NX_MAX_PHYSICAL_INTERFACES is exceeded.
<b>NX_DUPLICATED_ENTRY</b>	(0x52)	The supplied IP address is already used on this IP instance.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pointer input.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP address input.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
/* Attach secondary device for device IP address 192.168.1.68 with
   the specified Ethernet driver. */
status = nx_ip_interface_attach(ip_ptr, "secondary_port",
                                IP_ADDRESS(192,168,1,68),
                                0xFFFFFFFF0UL,
                                nx_etherDriver);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the interface was successfully added to
   the IP instance interface table. */
```

### See Also

`nx_ip_interface_address_get`, `nx_ip_interface_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_interface_info_get`, `nx_ip_interface_status_check`,  
`nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set`

# nx\_ip\_interface\_info\_get


Retrieve network interface parameters

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_interface_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                              UINT interface_index,
                              CHAR **interface_name,
                              ULONG *ip_address,
                              ULONG *network_mask,
                              ULONG *mtu_size,
                              ULONG *physical_address_msw,
                              ULONG *physical_address_lsw);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information on network parameters for the specified network interface. All data are retrieved in host byte order.

 *ip\_ptr must point to a valid NetX IP structure. The specified interface, if not the primary interface, must be previously attached to the IP instance.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
interface_index	Index specifying network interface.
interface_name	Pointer to the buffer that holds the name of the network interface.
ip_address	Pointer to the destination for the IP address of the interface.
network_mask	Pointer to destination for network mask.
mtu_size	Pointer to destination for maximum transfer unit for this interface.
physical_address_msw	Pointer to destination for top 16 bits of the device MAC address.
physical_address_lsw	Pointer to destination for lower 32 bits of the device MAC address.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Interface information has been obtained.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pointer input.

NX_INVALID_INTERFACE (0x4C)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR (0x11)	Service is not called from system initialization or thread context.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

/* Retrieve interface parameters for the specified interface (index
   1 in IP instance list of interfaces). */
#define INTERFACE_INDEX 1
status = nx_ip_interface_info_get(ip_ptr, INTERFACE_INDEX,
                                   &name_ptr, &ip_address,
                                   &network_mask,
                                   &mtu_size,
                                   &physical_address_msw,
                                   &physical_address_lsw);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the interface information is
   successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_get, nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_set,  
 nx\_ip\_interface\_attach, nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check,  
 nx\_ip\_link\_status\_change\_notify\_set

# nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check

Check status of an IP instance

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_interface_status_check(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                  UINT interface_index,
                                  ULONG needed_status,
                                  ULONG *actual_status,
                                  ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service checks and optionally waits for the specified status of the network interface of a previously created IP instance.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
interface_index	Interface index number
needed_status	IP status requested, defined in bit-map form as follows: NX_IP_INITIALIZE_DONE (0x0001) NX_IP_ADDRESS_RESOLVED (0x0002) NX_IP_LINK_ENABLED (0x0004) NX_IP_ARP_ENABLED (0x0008) NX_IP_UDP_ENABLED (0x0010) NX_IP_TCP_ENABLED (0x0020) NX_IP_IGMP_ENABLED (0x0040) NX_IP_RARP_COMPLETE (0x0080) NX_IP_INTERFACE_LINK_ENABLED (0x0100)
actual_status	Pointer to destination of actual bits set.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if the requested status bits are not available. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP status check.
<b>NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL</b>	(0x43)	Status request was not satisfied within the timeout specified.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	IP pointer is or has become invalid, or actual status pointer is invalid.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0a)	Invalid needed status option.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_INVALID_INTERFACE</b>	(0x4C)	Interface_index is out of range. or the interface is not valid.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Wait 10 ticks for the link up status on the previously created IP
   instance. */
status = nx_ip_interface_status_check(&ip_0, 1, NX_IP_LINK_ENABLED,
                                       &actual_status, 10);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the secondary link for the specified IP
   instance is up. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_interface_address_get`, `nx_ip_interface_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_interface_attach`, `nx_ip_interface_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set`

# nx\_ip\_link\_status\_change\_notify\_set

Set the link status change notify callback function

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                         VOID(*link_status_change_notify)(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                         UINT interface_index, UINT link_up))
```

## Description

This service configures the link status change notify callback function. The user-supplied *link\_status\_change\_notify* routine is invoked when either the primary or secondary interface status is changed (such as IP address is changed.) If *link\_status\_change\_notify* is NULL, the link status change notify callback feature is disabled.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	IP control block pointer
link_status_change_notify	User-supplied callback function to be called upon a change to the physical interface.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful set
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP control block pointer or new physical address pointer
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Service is not called from system initialization or thread context.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Configure a callback function to be used when the physical
   interface status is changed. */
status = nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set(&ip_0,
                                              my_change_cb);

/* If status == NX_SUCCESS, the link status change notify function
   is set. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_interface_address_get`, `nx_ip_interface_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_interface_attach`, `nx_ip_interface_info_get`,  
`nx_ip_interface_status_check`





## Example

```
/* Disable raw packet sending/receiving for this IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_raw_packet_disable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, raw IP packet sending/receiving has
   been disabled for the previously created IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_raw_packet_enable`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_receive`,  
`nx_ip_raw_packet_send`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send`



## Example

```
/* Enable raw packet sending/receiving for this IP instance. */
status = nx_ip_raw_packet_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, raw IP packet sending/receiving has
   been enabled for the previously created IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_raw_packet_disable`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_receive`,  
`nx_ip_raw_packet_send`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send`

## **nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_interface\_send**

Send raw IP packet through specified network interface

### **Prototype**

```
UINT nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                                     NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                                     ULONG destination_ip,
                                     UINT address_index,
                                     ULONG type_of_service);
```

### **Description**

This service sends a raw IP packet to the destination IP address using the specified local IP address as the source address, and through the associated network interface. Note that this routine returns immediately, and it is, therefore, not known if the IP packet has actually been sent. The network driver will be responsible for releasing the packet when the transmission is complete. This service differs from other services in that there is no way of knowing if the packet was actually sent. It could get lost on the Internet.



*Note that raw IP processing must be enabled.*



*This service is similar to **nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_send**, except that this service allows an application to send raw IP packet from a specified physical interfaces.*

### **Parameters**

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP task.
packet_ptr	Pointer to packet to transmit.
destination_ip	IP address to send packet.
address_index	Index of the address of the interface to send packet out on.
type_of_service	Type of service for packet.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Packet successfully transmitted.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	No suitable outgoing interface available.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	Raw IP packet processing not enabled.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pointer input.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0A)	Invalid type of service specified.
<b>NX_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x03)	Invalid packet prepend pointer.
<b>NX_UNDERFLOW</b>	(0x02)	Invalid packet prepend pointer.
<b>NX_INVALID_INTERFACE</b>	(0x4C)	Invalid interface index specified.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
#define ADDRESS_IDNEX 1
/* Send packet out on interface 1 with normal type of service. */
status = nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send(ip_ptr, packet_ptr,
                                          destination_ip,
                                          ADDRESS_INDEX,
                                          NX_IP_NORMAL);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the packet was successfully
   transmitted. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_raw_packet_disable`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_enable`,  
`nx_ip_raw_packet_receive`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_send`

# nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_receive


Receive raw IP packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_raw_packet_receive(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                              NX_PACKET **packet_ptr,
                              ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service receives a raw IP packet from the specified IP instance. If there are IP packets on the raw packet receive queue, the first (oldest) packet is returned to the caller. Otherwise, if no packets are available, the caller may suspend as specified by the wait option.

 *If NX\_SUCCESS, is returned, the application is responsible for releasing the received packet when it is no longer needed.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
packet_ptr	Pointer to pointer to place the received raw IP packet in.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if there are no raw IP packets available. The wait options are defined as follows: <div><div><div>NX_NO_WAIT</div><div>NX_WAIT_FOREVER</div><div>timeout value</div></div><div><div>(0x00000000)</div><div>(0xFFFFFFFF)</div><div>(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)</div></div></div>

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful IP raw packet receive.
NX_NO_PACKET	(0x01)	No packet was available.
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .

NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP or return packet pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Receive a raw IP packet for this IP instance, wait for a maximum
   of 4 timer ticks. */
status = nx_ip_raw_packet_receive(&ip_0, &packet_ptr, 4);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the raw IP packet pointer is in the
   variable packet_ptr. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_ip_raw_packet_disable`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_enable`,  
`nx_ip_raw_packet_send`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send`

# nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_send

Send raw IP packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_raw_packet_send(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                           NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                           ULONG destination_ip,
                           ULONG type_of_service);
```

## Description

This service sends a raw IP packet to the destination IP address. Note that this routine returns immediately, and it is therefore not known whether the IP packet has actually been sent. The network driver will be responsible for releasing the packet when the transmission is complete.

For a multihome system, NetX uses the destination IP address to find an appropriate network interface and uses the IP address of the interface as the source address. If the destination IP address is broadcast or multicast, the first valid interface is used. Applications use the ***nx\_ip\_raw\_packet\_interface\_send*** in this case.



*Unless an error is returned, the application should not release the packet after this call. Doing so will cause unpredictable results because the network driver will release the packet after transmission.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
packet_ptr	Pointer to the raw IP packet to send.
destination_ip	Destination IP address, which can be a specific host IP address, a network broadcast, an internal loop-back, or a multicast address.

type_of_service	Defines the type of service for the transmission, legal values are as follows:
-----------------	--

NX_IP_NORMAL	(0x00000000)
NX_IP_MIN_DELAY	(0x00100000)
NX_IP_MAX_DATA	(0x00080000)
NX_IP_MAX_RELIABLE	(0x00040000)
NX_IP_MIN_COST	(0x00020000)



## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP raw packet send initiated.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	Raw IP feature is not enabled.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0A)	Invalid type of service.
<b>NX_UNDERFLOW</b>	(0x02)	Not enough room to prepend an IP header on the packet.
<b>NX_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x03)	Packet append pointer is invalid.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or packet pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Send a raw IP packet to IP address 1.2.3.5. */
status = nx_ip_raw_packet_send(&ip_0, packet_ptr,
                               IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,5),
                               NX_IP_NORMAL);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the raw IP packet pointed to by
   packet_ptr has been sent. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_raw_packet_disable`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_enable`,  
`nx_ip_raw_packet_receive`, `nx_ip_raw_packet_send`,  
`nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send`

# nx\_ip\_static\_route\_add


Add static route to the routing table

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_static_route_add(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                             ULONG network_address,
                             ULONG net_mask,
                             ULONG next_hop);
```

## Description

This service adds an entry to the static routing table. Note that the *next\_hop* address must be directly accessible from one of the local network devices.

 *Note that ip\_ptr must point to a valid NetX IP structure and the NetX library must be built with NX\_ENABLE\_IP\_STATIC\_ROUTING defined to use this service. By default NetX is built without NX\_ENABLE\_IP\_STATIC\_ROUTING defined.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
network_address	Target network address, in host byte order
net_mask	Target network mask, in host byte order
next_hop	Next hop address for the target network, in host byte order

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Entry is added to the static routing table.
NX_OVERFLOW	(0x03)	Static routing table is full.
NX_NOT_SUPPORTED	(0x4B)	This feature is not compiled in.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Next hop is not directly accessible via local interfaces.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid ip_ptr pointer.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Specify the next hop for the 192.168.10.0 through the gateway
   192.168.1.1. */
status = nx_ip_static_route_add(ip_ptr, IP_ADDRESS(192,168,10,0),
                                0xFFFFFFFF0UL,
                                IP_ADDRESS(192,168,1,1));

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the route was successfully added to the
   static routing table. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_ip_gateway_address_set`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_static_route_delete`

# nx\_ip\_static\_route\_delete


Delete static route from routing table

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_static_route_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                               ULONG network_address,
                               ULONG net_mask);
```

## Description

This service deletes an entry from the static routing table.

 *Note that ip\_ptr must point to a valid NetX IP structure and the NetX library must be built with NX\_ENABLE\_IP\_STATIC\_ROUTING defined to use this service. By default NetX is built without NX\_ENABLE\_IP\_STATIC\_ROUTING defined.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
network_address	Target network address, in host byte order.
net_mask	Target network mask, in host byte order.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful deletion from the static routing table.
<b>NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL</b>	(0x43)	Entry cannot be found in the routing table.
<b>NX_NOT_SUPPORTED</b>	(0x4B)	This feature is not compiled in.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid ip_ptr pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Remove the static route for 192.168.10.0 from the routing
   table.*/
status = nx_ip_static_route_delete(ip_ptr,
                                   IP_ADDRESS(192,168,10,0),
                                   0xFFFFFFFF00UL);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS the route was successfully removed from
   the static routing table. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_ip_gateway_address_set`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_static_route_add`

# nx\_ip\_status\_check

Check status of an IP instance

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_ip_status_check(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        ULONG needed_status,
                        ULONG *actual_status,
                        ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service checks and optionally waits for the specified status of the primary network interface of a previously created IP instance. To obtain status on secondary interfaces, applications shall use the service *nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check*.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
needed_status	IP status requested, defined in bit-map form as follows: <div><div>NX_IP_INITIALIZE_DONE</div><div>(0x0001)</div><div>NX_IP_ADDRESS_RESOLVED</div><div>(0x0002)</div><div>NX_IP_LINK_ENABLED</div><div>(0x0004)</div><div>NX_IP_ARP_ENABLED</div><div>(0x0008)</div><div>NX_IP_UDP_ENABLED</div><div>(0x0010)</div><div>NX_IP_TCP_ENABLED</div><div>(0x0020)</div><div>NX_IP_IGMP_ENABLED</div><div>(0x0040)</div><div>NX_IP_RARP_COMPLETE</div><div>(0x0080)</div><div>NX_IP_INTERFACE_LINK_ENABLED</div><div>(0x0100)</div></div>
actual_status	Pointer to destination of actual bits set.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if the requested status bits are not available. The wait options are defined as follows: <div><div>NX_NO_WAIT</div><div>(0x00000000)</div><div>NX_WAIT_FOREVER</div><div>(0xFFFFFFFF)</div><div>timeout value</div><div>(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)</div></div>

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful IP status check.
<b>NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL</b>	(0x43)	Status request was not satisfied within the timeout specified.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	IP pointer is or has become invalid, or actual status pointer is invalid.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0a)	Invalid needed status option.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Wait 10 ticks for the link up status on the previously created IP
   instance. */
status = nx_ip_status_check(&ip_0, NX_IP_LINK_ENABLED,
                           &actual_status, 10);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the link for the specified IP instance
   is up. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_system_initialize`

## nx\_packet\_allocate

Allocate packet from specified pool

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_allocate(NX_PACKET_POOL *pool_ptr,
                        NX_PACKET **packet_ptr,
                        ULONG packet_type,
                        ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service allocates a packet from the specified pool and adjusts the prepend pointer in the packet according to the type of packet specified. If no packet is available, the service suspends according to the supplied wait option.

### Parameters

pool_ptr	Pointer to previously created packet pool.						
packet_ptr	Pointer to the pointer of the allocated packet pointer.						
packet_type	Defines the type of packet requested. See “Packet Pools” on page 49 in Chapter 3 for a list of supported packet types.						
wait_option	Defines the wait time in ticks if there are no packets available in the packet pool. The wait options are defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td>NX_NO_WAIT</td><td>(0x00000000)</td></tr> <tr> <td>NX_WAIT_FOREVER</td><td>(0xFFFFFFFF)</td></tr> <tr> <td>timeout value</td><td>(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)</td></tr> </table>	NX_NO_WAIT	(0x00000000)	NX_WAIT_FOREVER	(0xFFFFFFFF)	timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)
NX_NO_WAIT	(0x00000000)						
NX_WAIT_FOREVER	(0xFFFFFFFF)						
timeout value	(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)						



## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful packet allocate.
<b>NX_NO_PACKET</b>	(0x01)	No packet available.
<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_INVALID_PARAMETERS</b>	(0x4D)	Packet size cannot support protocol.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0A)	Invalid packet type.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pool or packet return pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid wait option from non-thread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs (application network drivers). Wait option must be *NX\_NO\_WAIT* when used in ISR or in timer context.

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Allocate a new UDP packet from the previously created packet pool
and suspend for a maximum of 5 timer ticks if the pool is
empty. */
status = nx_packet_allocate(&pool_0, &packet_ptr,
                             NX_UDP_PACKET, 5);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the newly allocated packet pointer is
found in the variable packet_ptr. */
```

## See Also

*nx\_packet\_copy*, *nx\_packet\_data\_append*,  
*nx\_packet\_data\_extract\_offset*, *nx\_packet\_data\_retrieve*,  
*nx\_packet\_length\_get*, *nx\_packet\_pool\_create*, *nx\_packet\_pool\_delete*,  
*nx\_packet\_pool\_info\_get*, *nx\_packet\_release*,  
*nx\_packet\_transmit\_release*

# nx\_packet\_copy

Copy packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_copy(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                    NX_PACKET **new_packet_ptr,
                    NX_PACKET_POOL *pool_ptr,
                    ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service copies the information in the supplied packet to one or more new packets that are allocated from the supplied packet pool. If successful, the pointer to the new packet is returned in destination pointed to by **new\_packet\_ptr**.

## Parameters

packet_ptr	Pointer to the source packet.
new_packet_ptr	Pointer to the destination of where to return the pointer to the new copy of the packet.
pool_ptr	Pointer to the previously created packet pool that is used to allocate one or more packets for the copy.
wait_option	Defines how the service waits if there are no packets available. The wait options are defined as follows: <div>NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)</div>

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful packet copy.
NX_NO_PACKET	(0x01)	Packet not available for copy.
NX_INVALID_PACKET	(0x12)	Empty source packet or copy failed.
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to tx_thread_wait_abort.

<b>NX_INVALID_PARAMETERS</b>	(0x4D)	Packet size cannot support protocol.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pool, packet, or destination pointer.
<b>NX_UNDERFLOW</b>	(0x02)	Invalid packet prepend pointer.
<b>NX_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x03)	Invalid packet append pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	A wait option was specified in initialization or in an ISR.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
NX_PACKET *new_copy_ptr;

/* Copy packet pointed to by "old_packet_ptr" using packets from
   previously created packet pool_0. */
status = nx_packet_copy(old_packet, &new_copy_ptr, &pool_0, 20);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, new_copy_ptr points to the packet copy. */
```

### See Also

nx\_packet\_allocate, nx\_packet\_data\_append,  
 nx\_packet\_data\_extract\_offset, nx\_packet\_data\_retrieve,  
 nx\_packet\_length\_get, nx\_packet\_pool\_create, nx\_packet\_pool\_delete,  
 nx\_packet\_pool\_info\_get, nx\_packet\_release,  
 nx\_packet\_transmit\_release

# nx\_packet\_data\_append

Append data to end of packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_data_append(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                           VOID *data_start, ULONG data_size,
                           NX_PACKET_POOL *pool_ptr,
                           ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service appends data to the end of the specified packet. The supplied data area is copied into the packet. If there is not enough memory available, and the chained packet feature is enabled, one or more packets will be allocated to satisfy the request. If the chained packet feature is not enabled, *NX\_SIZE\_ERROR* is returned.

## Parameters

packet_ptr	Packet pointer.
data_start	Pointer to the start of the user's data area to append to the packet.
data_size	Size of user's data area.
pool_ptr	Pointer to packet pool from which to allocate another packet if there is not enough room in the current packet.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if there are no packets available. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful packet append.
NX_NO_PACKET	(0x01)	No packet available.
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .

**NX\_INVALID\_PARAMETERS**

	(0x4D)	Packet size cannot support protocol.
NX_UNDERFLOW	(0x02)	Prepend pointer is less than payload start.
NX_OVERFLOW	(0x03)	Append pointer is greater than payload end.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pool, packet, or data Pointer.
NX_SIZE_ERROR	(0x09)	Invalid data size.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid wait option from non-thread.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs (application network drivers)

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Append "abcd" to the specified packet. */
status = nx_packet_data_append(packet_ptr, "abcd", 4, &pool_0, 5);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the additional four bytes "abcd" have
   been appended to the packet. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_extract_offset`,  
`nx_packet_data_retrieve`, `nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_create`,  
`nx_packet_pool_delete`, `nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_release`,  
`nx_packet_transmit_release`

# nx\_packet\_data\_extract\_offset

Extract data from packet via an offset

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_data_extract_offset(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                                   ULONG offset,
                                   VOID *buffer_start,
                                   ULONG buffer_length,
                                   ULONG *bytes_copied);
```

## Description

This service copies data from a NetX packet (or packet chain) starting at the specified offset from the packet prepend pointer of the specified size in bytes into the specified buffer. The number of bytes actually copied is returned in *bytes\_copied*. This service does not remove data from the packet, nor does it adjust the prepend pointer or other internal state information.

## Parameters

packet_ptr	Pointer to packet to extract
offset	Offset from the current prepend pointer.
buffer_start	Pointer to start of save buffer
buffer_length	Number of bytes to copy
bytes_copied	Number of bytes actually copied

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful packet copy
<b>NX_PACKET_OFFSET_ERROR</b>	(0x53)	Invalid offset value was supplied
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid packet pointer or buffer pointer

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Extract 10 bytes from the start of the received packet buffer
   into the specified memory area. */
status = nx_packet_data_extract_offset(my_packet, 0, &data[0], 10,
                                       &bytes_copied) ;

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, 10 bytes were successfully copied into
   the data buffer. */
```

## See Also

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_retrieve`, `nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_create`,  
`nx_packet_pool_delete`, `nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_release`,  
`nx_packet_transmit_release`

## nx\_packet\_data\_retrieve

Retrieve data from packet

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_data_retrieve(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                             VOID *buffer_start,
                             ULONG *bytes_copied);
```

### Description

This service copies data from the supplied packet into the supplied buffer. The actual number of bytes copied is returned in the destination pointed to by **bytes\_copied**.

Note that this service does not change internal state of the packet. The data being retrieved is still available in the packet.



*The destination buffer must be large enough to hold the packet's contents. If not, memory will be corrupted causing unpredictable results.*

### Parameters

packet_ptr	Pointer to the source packet.
buffer_start	Pointer to the start of the buffer area.
bytes_copied	Pointer to the destination for the number of bytes copied.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful packet data retrieve.
<b>NX_INVALID_PACKET</b>	(0x12)	Invalid packet.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid packet, buffer start, or bytes copied pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
UCHAR          buffer[512];
ULONG          bytes_copied;

/* Retrieve data from packet pointed to by "packet_ptr". */
status = nx_packet_data_retrieve(packet_ptr, buffer, &bytes_copied);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, buffer contains the contents of the
   packet, the size of which is contained in "bytes_copied." */
```

## See Also

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_length_get`,  
`nx_packet_pool_create`, `nx_packet_pool_delete`,  
`nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_release`,  
`nx_packet_transmit_release`

## nx\_packet\_length\_get

---

Get length of packet data

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_length_get(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr, ULONG *length);
```

### Description

This service gets the length of the data in the specified packet.

### Parameters

packet_ptr	Pointer to the packet.
length	Destination for the packet length.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful packet length get.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid packet pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Get the length of the data in "my_packet." */  
status = nx_packet_length_get(my_packet, &my_length);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, data length is in "my_length". */
```

## See Also

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_data_retrieve`,  
`nx_packet_pool_create`, `nx_packet_pool_delete`,  
`nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_release`,  
`nx_packet_transmit_release`

# nx\_packet\_pool\_create

Create packet pool in specified memory area

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_pool_create(NX_PACKET_POOL *pool_ptr,
                           CHAR *name,
                           ULONG payload_size,
                           VOID *memory_ptr,
                           ULONG memory_size);
```

## Description

This service creates a packet pool of the specified packet size in the memory area supplied by the user.

## Parameters

pool_ptr	Pointer to packet pool control block.
name	Pointer to application's name for the packet pool.
payload_size	Number of bytes in each packet in the pool. This value must be at least 40 bytes and must also be evenly divisible by 4.
memory_ptr	Pointer to the memory area to place the packet pool in. The pointer should be aligned on an ULONG boundary.
memory_size	Size of the pool memory area.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful packet pool create.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pool or memory pointer.
NX_SIZE_ERROR	(0x09)	Invalid block or memory size.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Create a packet pool of 32000 bytes starting at physical
   address 0x10000000. */
status = nx_packet_pool_create(&pool_0, "Default Pool", 128,
                               (void *) 0x10000000, 32000);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the packet pool has been successfully
   created. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_data_retrieve`,  
`nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_delete`, `nx_packet_pool_info_get`,  
`nx_packet_release`, `nx_packet_transmit_release`

## nx\_packet\_pool\_delete

---

Delete previously created packet pool

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_pool_delete(NX_PACKET_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes a previously created packet pool. NetX checks for any threads currently suspended on packets in the packet pool and clears the suspension.

### Parameters

pool_ptr	Packet pool control block pointer.
----------	------------------------------------

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful packet pool delete.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pool pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
/* Delete a previously created packet pool. */
status = nx_packet_pool_delete(&pool_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the packet pool has been successfully
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_data_retrieve`,  
`nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_create`,  
`nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_release`,  
`nx_packet_transmit_release`

# nx\_packet\_pool\_info\_get

Retrieve information about a packet pool

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_pool_info_get(NX_PACKET_POOL *pool_ptr,
                             ULONG *total_packets,
                             ULONG *free_packets,
                             ULONG *empty_pool_requests,
                             ULONG *empty_pool_suspensions,
                             ULONG *invalid_packet_releases);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified packet pool.

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*

## Parameters

pool_ptr	Pointer to previously created packet pool.
total_packets	Pointer to destination for the total number of packets in the pool.
free_packets	Pointer to destination for the total number of currently free packets.
empty_pool_requests	Pointer to destination of the total number of allocation requests when the pool was empty.
empty_pool_suspensions	Pointer to destination of the total number of empty pool suspensions.
invalid_packet_releases	Pointer to destination of the total number of invalid packet releases.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful packet pool information retrieval.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.



**Allowed From**

Initialization, threads, and timers

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Retrieve packet pool information. */
status = nx_packet_pool_info_get(&pool_0,
                                &total_packets,
                                &free_packets,
                                &empty_pool_requests,
                                &empty_pool_suspensions,
                                &invalid_packet_releases);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, packet pool information was
   retrieved. */
```

**See Also**

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_data_retrieve`,  
`nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_create`, `nx_packet_pool_delete`,  
`nx_packet_release`, `nx_packet_transmit_release`

# nx\_packet\_release


Release previously allocated packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_release(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr);
```

## Description

This service releases a packet, including any additional packets chained to the specified packet. If another thread is blocked on packet allocation, it is given the packet and resumed.



*The application must prevent releasing a packet more than once, because doing so will cause unpredictable results.*

## Parameters

packet_ptr	Packet pointer.
------------	-----------------

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful packet release.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid packet pointer.
<b>NX_UNDERFLOW</b>	(0x02)	Prepend pointer is less than payload start.
<b>NX_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x03)	Append pointer is greater than payload end.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs (application network drivers)

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
/* Release a previously allocated packet. */
status = nx_packet_release(packet_ptr);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the packet has been returned to the
   packet pool it was allocated from. */
```

## See Also

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_data_retrieve`,  
`nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_create`, `nx_packet_pool_delete`,  
`nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_transmit_release`

# nx\_packet\_transmit\_release


Release a transmitted packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_packet_transmit_release(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr);
```

## Description

For non-TCP packets, this service releases a transmitted packet, including any additional packets chained to the specified packet. If another thread is blocked on packet allocation, it is given the packet and resumed. For a transmitted TCP packet, the packet is marked as being transmitted but not released till the packet is acknowledged. This service is typically called from the application's network driver after a packet is transmitted.



*The network driver should remove the physical media header and adjust the length of the packet before calling this service.*

## Parameters

packet\_ptr

Packet pointer.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful transmit packet release.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid packet pointer.
NX_UNDERFLOW	(0x02)	Prepend pointer is less than payload start.
NX_OVERFLOW	(0x03)	Append pointer is greater than payload end.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, Application network drivers (including ISRs)

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
/* Release a previously allocated packet that was just transmitted
   from the application network driver. */
status = nx_packet_transmit_release(packet_ptr);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the transmitted packet has been
   returned to the packet pool it was allocated from. */
```

## See Also

`nx_packet_allocate`, `nx_packet_copy`, `nx_packet_data_append`,  
`nx_packet_data_extract_offset`, `nx_packet_data_retrieve`,  
`nx_packet_length_get`, `nx_packet_pool_create`, `nx_packet_pool_delete`,  
`nx_packet_pool_info_get`, `nx_packet_release`



## Example

```
/* Disable RARP on the previously created IP instance. */
status = nx_rarp_disable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, RARP is disabled. */
```

## See Also

`nx_rarp_enable`, `nx_rarp_info_get`

## nx\_rarp\_enable

Enable Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_rarp_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);
```

### Description

This service enables the RARP component of NetX for the specific IP instance. The RARP components searches through all attached network interfaces for zero IP address. A zero IP address indicates the interface does not have IP address assignment yet. RARP attempts to resolve the IP address by enabling RARP process on that interface.

### Parameters

**ip\_ptr** Pointer to previously created IP instance.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful RARP enable.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	IP address is already valid.
<b>NX_ALREADY_ENABLED</b>	(0x15)	RARP was already enabled.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers

### Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
/* Enable RARP on the previously created IP instance. */
status = nx_rarp_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, RARP is enabled and is attempting to
   resolve this IP instance's address by querying the network. */
```

## See Also

`nx_rarp_disable`, `nx_rarp_info_get`

## nx\_rarp\_info\_get

Retrieve information about RARP activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_rarp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                     ULONG *rarp_requests_sent,
                     ULONG *rarp_responses_received,
                     ULONG *rarp_invalid_messages);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about RARP activities for the specified IP instance.

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
rarp_requests_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of RARP requests sent.
rarp_responses_received	Pointer to destination for the total number of RARP responses received.
rarp_invalid_messages	Pointer to destination of the total number of invalid messages.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful RARP information retrieval.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Retrieve RARP information from previously created IP
   Instance 0. */
status = nx_rarp_info_get(&ip_0,
                          &rarp_requests_sent,
                          &rarp_responses_received,
                          &rarp_invalid_messages);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, RARP information was retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_rarp_disable`, `nx_rarp_enable`

## nx\_system\_initialize

---

Initialize NetX System

### Prototype

```
VOID nx_system_initialize(VOID);
```

### Description

This service initializes the basic NetX system resources in preparation for use. It should be called by the application during initialization and before any other NetX call are made.

### Parameters

None

### Return Values

None

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Initialize NetX for operation. */  
nx_system_initialize();  
  
/* At this point, NetX is ready for IP creation and all subsequent  
network operations. */
```

## See Also

`nx_ip_address_change_notify`, `nx_ip_address_get`, `nx_ip_address_set`,  
`nx_ip_create`, `nx_ip_delete`, `nx_ip_driver_direct_command`,  
`nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command`, `nx_ip_forwarding_disable`,  
`nx_ip_forwarding_enable`, `nx_ip_fragment_disable`,  
`nx_ip_fragment_enable`, `nx_ip_info_get`, `nx_ip_status_check`

# nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind

Bind client TCP socket to TCP port

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_client_socket_bind(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                               UINT port,
                               ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service binds the previously created TCP client socket to the specified TCP port. Valid TCP sockets range from 0 through 0xFFFF. If the specified TCP port is unavailable, the service suspends according to the supplied wait option.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket instance.
port	Port number to bind (1 through 0xFFFF). If port number is NX_ANY_PORT (0x0000), the IP instance will search for the next free port and use that for the binding.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if the port is already bound to another socket. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket bind.
NX_ALREADY_BOUND	(0x22)	This socket is already bound to another TCP port.
NX_PORT_UNAVAILABLE	(0x23)	Port is already bound to a different socket.
NX_NO_FREE_PORTS	(0x45)	No free port.

<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	Invalid port.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Bind a previously created client socket to port 12 and wait for 7
   timer ticks for the bind to complete. */
status = nx_tcp_client_socket_bind(&client_socket, 12, 7);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the previously created client_socket is
   bound to port 12 on the associated IP instance. */

```

**See Also**

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get,  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind, nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find,  
 nx\_tcp\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_tcp\_socket\_create,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_send,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait

# nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect

Connect client TCP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_client_socket_connect(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                  ULONG server_ip,
                                  UINT server_port,
                                  ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service connects the previously created and bound TCP client socket to the specified server's port. Valid TCP server ports range from 0 through 0xFFFF. If the connection does not complete immediately, the service suspends according to the supplied wait option.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket instance.
server_ip	Server's IP address.
server_port	Server port number to connect to (1 through 0xFFFF).
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves while the connection is being established. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket connect.
NX_NOT_BOUND	(0x24)	Socket is not bound.
NX_NOT_CLOSED	(0x35)	Socket is not in a closed state.
NX_IN_PROGRESS	(0x37)	No wait was specified, the connection attempt is in progress.
NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	(0x4C)	Invalid interface supplied.



<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid server IP address.
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	Invalid port.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Initiate a TCP connection from a previously created and bound
   client socket. The connection requested in this example is to
   port 12 on the server with the IP address of 1.2.3.5. This
   service will wait 300 timer ticks for the connection to take
   place before giving up. */
status = nx_tcp_client_socket_connect(&client_socket,
                                     IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,5),
                                     12, 300);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the previously created and bound
   client_socket is connected to port 12 on IP 1.2.3.5. */

```

**See Also**

```

nx_tcp_client_socket_bind, nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get,
nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind, nx_tcp_enable, nx_tcp_free_port_find,
nx_tcp_info_get, nx_tcp_server_socket_accept,
nx_tcp_server_socket_listen, nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten,
nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept, nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten,
nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available, nx_tcp_socket_create,
nx_tcp_socket_delete, nx_tcp_socket_disconnect,
nx_tcp_socket_info_get, nx_tcp_socket_receive
nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set, nx_tcp_socket_send,
nx_tcp_socket_state_wait

```

# nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get

Get port number bound to client TCP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                   UINT *port_ptr);
```

## Description

This service retrieves the port number associated with the socket, which is useful to find the port allocated by NetX in situations where the NX\_ANY\_PORT was specified at the time the socket was bound.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket instance.
port_ptr	Pointer to destination for the return port number. Valid port numbers are (1 through 0xFFFF).

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket bind.
NX_NOT_BOUND	(0x24)	This socket is not bound to a port.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer or port return pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Get the port number of previously created and bound client
   socket. */
status = nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get(&client_socket, &port);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the port variable contains the port this
   socket is bound to. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`, `nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`,  
`nx_tcp_info_get`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

# **nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind**

---

## Unbind TCP client socket from TCP port

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr)
```

### Description

This service releases the binding between the TCP client socket and a TCP port. If there are other threads waiting to bind another socket to the same port number, the first suspended thread is then bound to this port.

### Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket instance.
------------	--

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket unbind.
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	Socket was not bound to any port.
<b>NX_NOT_CLOSED</b>	(0x35)	Socket has not been disconnected.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
/* Unbind a previously created and bound client TCP socket.  
status = nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind(&client_socket);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the client socket is no longer  
bound. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`,  
`nx_tcp_info_get`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`



## Example

```
/* Enable TCP on a previously created IP instance ip_0. */
status = nx_tcp_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, TCP is enabled on the IP instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

# nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find


Find next available TCP port

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_free_port_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                           UINT port,
                           UINT *free_port_ptr);
```

## Description

This service attempts to locate a free TCP port (unbound) starting from the application supplied port. The search logic will wrap around if the search happens to reach the maximum port value of 0xFFFF. If the search is successful, the free port is returned in the variable pointed to by *free\_port\_ptr*.

 *This service can be called from another thread and have the same port returned. To prevent this race condition, the application may wish to place this service and the actual client socket bind under the protection of a mutex.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
port	Port number to start search at (1 through 0xFFFF).
free_port_ptr	Pointer to the destination free port return value.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful free port find.
<b>NX_NO_FREE_PORTS</b>	(0x45)	No free ports found.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	The specified port number is invalid.



**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Locate a free TCP port, starting at port 12, on a previously
   created IP instance. */
status = nx_tcp_free_port_find(&ip_0, 12, &free_port);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, "free_port" contains the next free port
   on the IP instance. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect,  
nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind,  
nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept,  
nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten,  
nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_tcp\_socket\_create,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_send,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait

## nx\_tcp\_info\_get

Retrieve information about TCP activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                    ULONG *tcp_packets_sent,
                    ULONG *tcp_bytes_sent,
                    ULONG *tcp_packets_received,
                    ULONG *tcp_bytes_received,
                    ULONG *tcp_invalid_packets,
                    ULONG *tcp_receive_packets_dropped,
                    ULONG *tcp_checksum_errors,
                    ULONG *tcp_connections,
                    ULONG *tcp_disconnections,
                    ULONG *tcp_connections_dropped,
                    ULONG *tcp_retransmit_packets);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about TCP activities for the specified IP instance.

*i*

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
tcp_packets_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of TCP packets sent.
tcp_bytes_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of TCP bytes sent.
tcp_packets_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP packets received.
tcp_bytes_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP bytes received.
tcp_invalid_packets	Pointer to destination of the total number of invalid TCP packets.
tcp_receive_packets_dropped	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP receive packets dropped.
tcp_checksum_errors	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP packets with checksum errors.

tcp_connections	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP connections.
tcp_disconnections	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP disconnections.
tcp_connections_dropped	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP connections dropped.
tcp_retransmit_packets	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP packets retransmitted.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful TCP information retrieval.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

/* Retrieve TCP information from previously created IP Instance
   ip_0. */
status = nx_tcp_info_get(&ip_0,
                        &tcp_packets_sent,
                        &tcp_bytes_sent,
                        &tcp_packets_received,
                        &tcp_bytes_received,
                        &tcp_invalid_packets,
                        &tcp_receive_packets_dropped,
                        &tcp_checksum_errors,
                        &tcp_connections,
                        &tcp_disconnections,
                        &tcp_connections_dropped,
                        &tcp_retransmit_packets);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, TCP information was retrieved. */

```

## See Also

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect,  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind,  
 nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_tcp\_socket\_create,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_send,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait



# nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept


Accept TCP connection


## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_server_socket_accept(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service accepts (or prepares to accept) a TCP client socket connection request for a port that was previously set up for listening. This service may be called immediately after the application calls the listen or re-listen service or after the listen callback routine is called when the client connection is actually present. If a connection cannot not be established right away, the service suspends according to the supplied wait option.

 *The application must call **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept** after the connection is no longer needed to remove the server socket's binding to the server port.*

 *Application callback routines are called from within the IP's helper thread.*

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to the TCP server socket control block.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves while the connection is being established. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful TCP server socket accept (passive connect).
NX_NOT_LISTEN_STATE	(0x36)	The server socket supplied is not in a listen state.

<b>NX_IN_PROGRESS</b>	(0x37)	No wait was specified, the connection attempt is in progress.
<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Socket pointer error.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

NX_PACKET_POOL      my_pool;
NX_IP                my_ip;
NX_TCP_SOCKET        server_socket;

void port_12_connect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, UINT port)
{
    /* Simply set the semaphore to wake up the server thread. */
    tx_semaphore_put(&port_12_semaphore);
}

void port_12_disconnect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr)
{
    /* The client has initiated a disconnect on this socket. This
       example doesn't use this callback. */
}

void port_12_server_thread_entry(ULONG id)
{
    NX_PACKET  *my_packet;
    UINT       status, i;

    /* Assuming that:
       "port_12_semaphore" has already been created with an
       initial count of 0 "my_ip" has already been created and the
       link is enabled "my_pool" packet pool has already been
       created
    */
}

```

```

/* Create the server socket. */
nx_tcp_socket_create(&my_ip, &server_socket,
                    "Port 12 Server Socket",
                    NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY,
                    NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE, 100,
                    NX_NULL, port_12_disconnect_request);

/* Setup server listening on port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket, 5,
                           port_12_connect_request);

/* Loop to process 5 server connections, sending
   "Hello_and_Goodbye" to each client and then disconnecting.*/
for (i = 0; i < 5; i++)
{
    /* Get the semaphore that indicates a client connection
       request is present. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&port_12_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

    /* Wait for 200 ticks for the client socket connection to
       complete.*/
    status = nx_tcp_server_socket_accept(&server_socket, 200);

    /* Check for a successful connection. */
    if (status == NX_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Allocate a packet for the "Hello_and_Goodbye"
           message */
        nx_packet_allocate(&my_pool, &my_packet, NX_TCP_PACKET,
                          NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Place "Hello_and_Goodbye" in the packet. */
        nx_packet_data_append(my_packet, "Hello_and_Goodbye",
                              sizeof("Hello_and_Goodbye"),
                              &my_pool, NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Send "Hello_and_Goodbye" to client. */
        nx_tcp_socket_send(&server_socket, my_packet, 200);

        /* Check for an error. */
        if (status)
        {
            /* Error, release the packet. */
            nx_packet_release(my_packet);
        }

        /* Now disconnect the server socket from the client. */
        nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(&server_socket, 200);
    }

    /* Unaccept the server socket. Note that unaccept is called
       even if disconnect or accept fails. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(&server_socket);

    /* Setup server socket for listening with this socket
       again. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket);
}

```



```
/* We are now done so unlisten on server port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten(&my_ip, 12);

/* Delete the server socket. */
nx_tcp_socket_delete(&server_socket);
}
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

## nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen

Enable listening for client connection on TCP port

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT port,
                                NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                UINT listen_queue_size,
                                VOID (*listen_callback)
                                (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                 UINT port));
```

### Description

This service enables listening for a client connection request on the specified TCP port. When a client connection request is received, the supplied server socket is bound to the specified port and the supplied listen callback function is called.

The listen callback routine's processing is completely up to the application. It may contain logic to wake up an application thread that subsequently performs an accept operation. If the application already has a thread suspended on accept processing for this socket, the listen callback routine may not be needed.

If the application wishes to handle additional client connections on the same port, the ***nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten*** must be called with an available socket (a socket in the CLOSED state) for the next connection. Until the re-listen service is called, additional client connections are queued. When the maximum queue depth is exceeded, the oldest connection request is dropped in favor of queuing the new connection request. The maximum queue depth is specified by this service.

*i* Application callback routines are called from the internal IP helper thread.

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
port	Port number to listen on (1 through 0xFFFF).
socket_ptr	Pointer to socket to use for the connection.
listen_queue_size	Number of client connection requests that can be queued.

listen_callback	Application function to call when the connection is received. If a NULL is specified, the listen callback feature is disabled.
-----------------	--

**Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful TCP port listen enable.
<b>NX_MAX_LISTEN</b>	(0x33)	No more listen request structures are available. The constant <b>NX_MAX_LISTEN_REQUESTS</b> in <i><b>nx_api.h</b></i> defines how many active listen requests are possible.
<b>NX_NOT_CLOSED</b>	(0x35)	The supplied server socket is not in a closed state.
<b>NX_ALREADY_BOUND</b>	(0x22)	The supplied server socket is already bound to a port.
<b>NX_DUPLICATE_LISTEN</b>	(0x34)	There is already an active listen request for this port.
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	Invalid port specified.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

NX_PACKET_POOL	my_pool;
NX_IP	my_ip;
NX_TCP_SOCKET	server_socket;

```

void port_12_connect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, UINT port)
{
    /* Simply set the semaphore to wake up the server thread.*/
    tx_semaphore_put(&port_12_semaphore);
}

void port_12_disconnect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr)
{
    /* The client has initiated a disconnect on this socket.
       This example doesn't use this callback. */
}

void port_12_server_thread_entry(ULONG id)
{
    NX_PACKET    *my_packet;
    UINT         status, i;

    /* Assuming that:
       "port_12_semaphore" has already been created with an
       initial count of 0 "my_ip" has already been created
       and the link is enabled "my_pool" packet pool has already
       been created.
    */

    /* Create the server socket. */
    nx_tcp_socket_create(&my_ip, &server_socket, "Port 12 Server
        Socket",
        NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY,
        NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE, 100,
        NX_NULL, port_12_disconnect_request);

    /* Setup server listening on port 12. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket, 5,
        port_12_connect_request);

    /* Loop to process 5 server connections, sending
       "Hello_and_Goodbye" to
       each client and then disconnecting. */
    for (i = 0; i < 5; i++)
    {
        /* Get the semaphore that indicates a client connection
           request is present. */
        tx_semaphore_get(&port_12_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Wait for 200 ticks for the client socket connection
           to complete. */
        status = nx_tcp_server_socket_accept(&server_socket, 200);

        /* Check for a successful connection. */
        if (status == NX_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* Allocate a packet for the "Hello_and_Goodbye"
               message. */
            nx_packet_allocate(&my_pool, &my_packet, NX_TCP_PACKET,
                NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

```

```

/* Place "Hello_and_Goodbye" in the packet. */
nx_packet_data_append(my_packet, "Hello and Goodbye",
                      sizeof("Hello_and_Goodbye"),
                      &my_pool,
                      NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* Send "Hello_and_Goodbye" to client. */
nx_tcp_socket_send(&server_socket, my_packet, 200);

/* Check for an error. */
if (status)
{
    /* Error, release the packet. */
    nx_packet_release(my_packet);
}

/* Now disconnect the server socket from the client. */
nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(&server_socket, 200);
}

/* Unaccept the server socket. Note that unaccept is called
even if disconnect or accept fails. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(&server_socket);

/* Setup server socket for listening with this socket
again. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket);
}

/* We are now done so unlisten on server port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten(&my_ip, 12);

/* Delete the server socket. */
nx_tcp_socket_delete(&server_socket);
}

```

## See Also

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect,  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind,  
 nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_tcp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_tcp\_socket\_create,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_send,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait

## nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten

Re-listen for client connection on TCP port

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT port,
                                   NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

### Description

This service is called after a connection has been received on a port that was setup previously for listening. The main purpose of this service is to provide a new server socket for the next client connection. If a connection request is queued, the connection will be processed immediately during this service call.

*i*

*The same callback routine specified by the original listen request is also called when a connection is present for this new server socket.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
port	Port number to re-listen on (1 through 0xFFFF).
socket_ptr	Socket to use for the next client connection.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful TCP port re-listen.
<b>NX_NOT_CLOSED</b>	(0x35)	The supplied server socket is not in a closed state.
<b>NX_ALREADY_BOUND</b>	(0x22)	The supplied server socket is already bound to a port.
<b>NX_INVALID_RELISTEN</b>	(0x47)	There is already a valid socket pointer for this port or the port specified does not have a listen request active.
<b>NX_CONNECTION_PENDING</b>	(0x48)	Same as NX_SUCCESS, except there was a queued connection

		request and it was processed during this call.
NX_INVALID_PORT	(0x46)	Invalid port specified.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP or listen callback pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

NX_PACKET_POOL      my_pool;
NX_IP                my_ip;
NX_TCP_SOCKET        server_socket;

void port_12_connect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, UINT port)
{
    /* Simply set the semaphore to wake up the server thread.*/
    tx_semaphore_put(&port_12_semaphore);
}

void port_12_disconnect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr)
{
    /* The client has initiated a disconnect on this socket. This
       example doesn't use this callback. */
}

void port_12_server_thread_entry(ULONG id)
{
    NX_PACKET *my_packet;
    UINT status, i;

    /* Assuming that:
       "port_12_semaphore" has already been created with an initial
       count of 0.
       "my_ip" has already been created and the link is enabled.
       "my_pool" packet pool has already been created. */

    /* Create the server socket. */
    nx_tcp_socket_create(&my_ip, &server_socket, "Port 12 Server
Socket",
                        NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY,

```

```

NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE, 100,
NX_NULL,
port_12_disconnect_request);

/* Setup server listening on port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket, 5,
port_12_connect_request);

/* Loop to process 5 server connections, sending
"Hello_and_Goodbye" to each client then disconnecting. */
for (i = 0; i < 5; i++)
{
    /* Get the semaphore that indicates a client connection
    request is present. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&port_12_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

    /* Wait for 200 ticks for the client socket connection to
    complete. */
    status = nx_tcp_server_socket_accept(&server_socket, 200);

    /* Check for a successful connection. */
    if (status == NX_SUCCESS)
    {
        /* Allocate a packet for the "Hello_and_Goodbye"
        message. */
        nx_packet_allocate(&my_pool, &my_packet, NX_TCP_PACKET,
NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Place "Hello_and_Goodbye" in the packet. */
        nx_packet_data_append(my_packet, "Hello_and_Goodbye",
sizeof("Hello_and_Goodbye"),
&my_pool, NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Send "Hello_and_Goodbye" to client. */
        nx_tcp_socket_send(&server_socket, my_packet, 200);

        /* Check for an error. */
        if (status)
        {
            /* Error, release the packet. */
            nx_packet_release(my_packet);
        }

        /* Now disconnect the server socket from the client. */
        nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(&server_socket, 200);
    }

    /* Unaccept the server socket. Note that unaccept is
    called even if disconnect or accept fails. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(&server_socket);

    /* Setup server socket for listening with this socket
    again. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket);
}

/* We are now done so unlisten on server port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten(&my_ip, 12);

```



```
/* Delete the server socket. */  
nx_tcp_socket_delete(&server_socket);
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

# nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept

Remove socket association with listening port

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

## Description

This service removes the association between this server socket and the specified server port. The application must call this service after a disconnection or after an unsuccessful accept call.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously setup server socket instance.
------------	---

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful server socket unaccept.
NX_NOT_LISTEN_STATE	(0x36)	Server socket is in an improper state, and is probably not disconnected.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

NX_PACKET_POOL      my_pool;
NX_IP                my_ip;
NX_TCP_SOCKET        server_socket;

void port_12_connect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, UINT port)
{
    /* Simply set the semaphore to wake up the server thread. */
    tx_semaphore_put(&port_12_semaphore);
}

void port_12_disconnect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr)
{
    /* The client has initiated a disconnect on this socket. This example
       doesn't use this callback. */
}

void port_12_server_thread_entry(ULONG id)
{
    NX_PACKET    *my_packet;
    UINT         status, i;

    /* Assuming that:
       "port_12_semaphore" has already been created with an initial count
       of 0 "my_ip" has already been created and the link is enabled
       "my_pool" packet pool has already been created
    */

    /* Create the server socket. */
    nx_tcp_socket_create(&my_ip, &server_socket, "Port 12 Server
Socket", NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY,
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE, 100, NX_NULL,
port_12_disconnect_request);

    /* Setup server listening on port 12. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket, 5,
port_12_connect_request);

    /* Loop to process 5 server connections, sending "Hello_and_Goodbye"
       to
       each client and then disconnecting. */
    for (i = 0; i < 5; i++)
    {
        /* Get the semaphore that indicates a client connection request
           is present. */
        tx_semaphore_get(&port_12_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Wait for 200 ticks for the client socket connection to
           complete. */
        status = nx_tcp_server_socket_accept(&server_socket, 200);

        /* Check for a successful connection. */
        if (status == NX_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* Allocate a packet for the "Hello_and_Goodbye" message. */

```

```

nx_packet_allocate(&my_pool, &my_packet, NX_TCP_PACKET,
                  NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* Place "Hello_and_Goodbye" in the packet. */
nx_packet_data_append(my_packet,
                      "Hello_and_Goodbye", sizeof("Hello_and_Goodbye"),
                      &my_pool, NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* Send "Hello_and_Goodbye" to client. */
nx_tcp_socket_send(&server_socket, my_packet, 200);

/* Check for an error. */
if (status)
{
    /* Error, release the packet. */
    nx_packet_release(my_packet);
}

/* Now disconnect the server socket from the client. */
nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(&server_socket, 200);
}

/* Unaccept the server socket. Note that unaccept is called even
   if disconnect or accept fails. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(&server_socket);

/* Setup server socket for listening with this socket again. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket);
}

/* We are now done so unlisten on server port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten(&my_ip, 12);

/* Delete the server socket. */
nx_tcp_socket_delete(&server_socket);
}

```

**See Also**

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`, `nx_tcp_enable`,  
`nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`, `nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_create`, `nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

## **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten**

Disable listening for client connection on TCP port

### **Prototype**

```
UINT nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT port);
```

### **Description**

This service disables listening for a client connection request on the specified TCP port.

### **Parameters**

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
port	Number of port to disable listening (0 through 0xFFFF).

### **Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful TCP listen disable.
<b>NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND</b>	(0x16)	Listening was not enabled for the specified port.
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	Invalid port specified.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

### **Allowed From**

Threads

### **Preemption Possible**

No

## Example

```

NX_PACKET_POOL      my_pool;
NX_IP                my_ip;
NX_TCP_SOCKET        server_socket;

void port_12_connect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, UINT port)
{
    /* Simply set the semaphore to wake up the server thread. */
    tx_semaphore_put(&port_12_semaphore);
}

void port_12_disconnect_request(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr)
{
    /* The client has initiated a disconnect on this socket. This example
       doesn't use this callback.*/
}

void port_12_server_thread_entry(ULONG id)
{
    NX_PACKET    *my_packet;
    UINT         status, i;

    /* Assuming that:
       "port_12_semaphore" has already been created with an initial count
       of 0 "my_ip" has already been created and the link is enabled
       "my_pool" packet pool has already been created
    */

    /* Create the server socket. */
    nx_tcp_socket_create(&my_ip, &server_socket, "Port 12 Server Socket",
                        NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY,
                        NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE, 100,
                        NX_NULL, port_12_disconnect_request);

    /* Setup server listening on port 12. */
    nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket, 5,
                                port_12_connect_request);

    /* Loop to process 5 server connections, sending "Hello_and_Goodbye" to
       each client and then disconnecting. */
    for (i = 0; i < 5; i++)
    {
        /* Get the semaphore that indicates a client connection request is
           present. */
        tx_semaphore_get(&port_12_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Wait for 200 ticks for the client socket connection to complete.*/
        status = nx_tcp_server_socket_accept(&server_socket, 200);

        /* Check for a successful connection. */
        if (status == NX_SUCCESS)
        {
            /* Allocate a packet for the "Hello_and_Goodbye" message. */
            nx_packet_allocate(&my_pool, &my_packet, NX_TCP_PACKET,
                              NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

```

```

/* Place "Hello_and_Goodbye" in the packet. */
nx_packet_data_append(my_packet, "Hello_and_Goodbye",
                      sizeof("Hello_and_Goodbye"), &my_pool,
                      NX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* Send "Hello_and_Goodbye" to client. */
nx_tcp_socket_send(&server_socket, my_packet, 200);

/* Check for an error. */
if (status)
{
    /* Error, release the packet. */
    nx_packet_release(my_packet);
}

/* Now disconnect the server socket from the client. */
nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(&server_socket, 200);
}

/* Unaccept the server socket. Note that unaccept is called even if
   disconnect or accept fails. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept(&server_socket);

/* Setup server socket for listening with this socket again. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_listen(&my_ip, 12, &server_socket);
}

/* We are now done so unlisten on server port 12. */
nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten(&my_ip, 12);

/* Delete the server socket. */
nx_tcp_socket_delete(&server_socket);
}

```



**See Also**

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

## **nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available**

Retrieves number of bytes available for retrieval

### **Prototype**

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                   ULONG *bytes_available);
```

### **Description**

This service obtains the number of bytes available for retrieval in the specified TCP socket. Note that the TCP socket must already be connected.

### **Parameters**

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created and connected TCP socket.
bytes_available	Pointer to destination for bytes available.

### **Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Service executes successfully. Number of bytes available for read is returned to the caller.
<b>NX_NOT_CONNECTED</b>	(0x38)	Socket is not in a connected state.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid pointers.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	TCP is not enabled.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

### **Allowed From**

Threads

### **Preemption Possible**

No

## Example

```
/* Get the bytes available for retrieval on the specified socket. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available(&my_socket, &bytes_available);

/* Is status = NX_SUCCESS, the available bytes is returned in
   bytes_available. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

## nx\_tcp\_socket\_create

Create TCP client or server socket

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr, NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                          CHAR *name, ULONG type_of_service, ULONG fragment,
                          UINT time_to_live, ULONG window_size,
                          VOID (*urgent_data_callback)(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr),
                          VOID (*disconnect_callback)(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr));
```

### Description

This service creates a TCP client or server socket for the specified IP instance.

*i* Application callback routines are called from the thread associated with this IP instance.

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
socket_ptr	Pointer to new TCP socket control block.
name	Application name for this TCP socket.
type_of_service	Defines the type of service for the transmission, legal values are as follows:
	NX_IP_NORMAL (0x00000000)
	NX_IP_MIN_DELAY (0x00100000)
	NX_IP_MAX_DATA (0x00080000)
	NX_IP_MAX_RELIABLE (0x00040000)
	NX_IP_MIN_COST (0x00020000)
fragment	Specifies whether or not IP fragmenting is allowed. If NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY (0x0) is specified, IP fragmenting is allowed. If NX_DONT_FRAGMENT (0x4000) is specified, IP fragmenting is disabled.
time_to_live	Specifies the 8-bit value that defines how many routers this packet can pass before being thrown away. The default value is specified by NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE.

window_size	Defines the maximum number of bytes allowed in the receive queue for this socket
urgent_data_callback	Application function that is called whenever urgent data is detected in the receive stream. If this value is NX_NULL, urgent data is ignored.
disconnect_callback	Application function that is called whenever a disconnect is issued by the socket at the other end of the connection. If this value is NX_NULL, the disconnect callback function is disabled.

### Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful TCP client socket create.
NX_OPTION_ERROR	(0x0A)	Invalid type-of-service, fragment, invalid window size, or time-to-live option.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid IP or socket pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization and Threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

/* Create a TCP client socket on the previously created IP instance,
   with normal delivery, IP fragmentation enabled, 0x80 time to
   live, a 200-byte receive window, no urgent callback routine, and
   the "client_disconnect" routine to handle disconnection initiated
   from the other end of the connection. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_create(&ip_0, &client_socket,
                              "Client Socket",
                              NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY,
                              0x80, 200, NX_NULL,
                              client_disconnect);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the client socket is created and ready
   to be bound. */

```

## See Also

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect,  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind,  
 nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_tcp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten, nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_send,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait



# nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete

Delete TCP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_delete(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes a previously created TCP socket. If the socket is still bound or connected, the service returns an error code.

## Parameters

socket\_ptr                      Previously created TCP socket

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket delete.
<b>NX_NOT_CREATED</b>	(0x27)	Socket was not created.
<b>NX_STILL_BOUND</b>	(0x42)	Socket is still bound.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
/* Delete a previously created TCP client socket. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_delete(&client_socket);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the client socket is deleted. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`, `nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_create`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_send`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect

Disconnect client and server socket connections

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                              ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service disconnects an established client or server socket connection. A disconnect of a server socket should be followed by an un-accept request, while a client socket that is disconnected is left in a state ready for another connection request. If the disconnect process cannot finish immediately, the service suspends according to the supplied wait option.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously connected client or server socket instance.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves while the disconnection is in progress. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket disconnect.
NX_NOT_CONNECTED	(0x38)	Specified socket is not connected.
NX_IN_PROGRESS	(0x37)	Disconnect is in progress, no wait was specified.
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.

NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
/* Disconnect from a previously established connection and wait a
   maximum of 400 timer ticks. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(&client_socket, 400);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the previously connected socket (either
   as a result of the client socket connect or the server accept) is
   disconnected. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`, `nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_create`, `nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_send`, `nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

## **nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect\_complete\_notify**

Install TCP disconnect complete notify callback function

### **Prototype**

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify(
    NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
    VOID (*tcp_disconnect_complete_notify)
        (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr))
```

### **Description**

This service registers a callback function which is invoked after a socket disconnect operation is completed. The TCP socket disconnect complete callback function is available if NetX is built with the option ***NX\_ENABLE\_EXTENDED\_NOTIFY\_SUPPORT*** defined.

### **Parameters**

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously connected client or server socket instance.
tcp_disconnect_complete_notify	The callback function to be installed.

### **Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successfully registered the callback function.
<b>NX_NOT_SUPPORTED</b>	(0x4B)	The extended notify feature is not built into the NetX library
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	TCP feature is not enabled.

### **Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

### **Preemption Possible**

No

## Example

```
/* Install the disconnect complete notify callback function. */  
status = nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify(&client_socket,  
                                                  callback);
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`, `nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_establish\_notify

Set TCP establish notify callback function

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
    VOID (*tcp_establish_notify)(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr))
```

## Description

This service registers a callback function, which is called after a TCP socket makes a connection. The TCP socket establish callback function is available if NetX is built with the option ***NX\_ENABLE\_EXTENDED\_NOTIFY\_SUPPORT*** defined.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously connected client or server socket instance.
tcp_establish_notify	Callback function invoked after a TCP connection is established.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successfully sets the notify function.
<b>NX_NOT_SUPPORTED</b>	(0x4B)	The extended notify feature is not built into the NetX library
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	TCP has not been enabled by the application.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Set the function pointer "callback" as the notify function NetX
   will call when the connection is in the established state. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify(&client_socket, callback);
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`, `nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

## nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get

---

Retrieve information about TCP socket activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_info_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,  
                             ULONG *tcp_packets_sent,  
                             ULONG *tcp_bytes_sent,  
                             ULONG *tcp_packets_received,  
                             ULONG *tcp_bytes_received,  
                             ULONG *tcp_retransmit_packets,  
                             ULONG *tcp_packets_queued,  
                             ULONG *tcp_checksum_errors,  
                             ULONG *tcp_socket_state,  
                             ULONG *tcp_transmit_queue_depth,  
                             ULONG *tcp_transmit_window,  
                             ULONG *tcp_receive_window);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about TCP socket activities for the specified TCP socket instance.

*i*

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*



## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket instance.
tcp_packets_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of TCP packets sent on socket.
tcp_bytes_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of TCP bytes sent on socket.
tcp_packets_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP packets received on socket.
tcp_bytes_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP bytes received on socket.
tcp_retransmit_packets	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP packet retransmissions.
tcp_packets_queued	Pointer to destination of the total number of queued TCP packets on socket.
tcp_checksum_errors	Pointer to destination of the total number of TCP packets with checksum errors on socket.
tcp_socket_state	Pointer to destination of the socket's current state.
tcp_transmit_queue_depth	Pointer to destination of the total number of transmit packets still queued waiting for ACK.
tcp_transmit_window	Pointer to destination of the current transmit window size.
tcp_receive_window	Pointer to destination of the current receive window size.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful TCP socket information retrieval.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Retrieve TCP socket information from previously created
   socket_0.*/
status = nx_tcp_socket_info_get(&socket_0,
                                &tcp_packets_sent,
                                &tcp_bytes_sent,
                                &tcp_packets_received,
                                &tcp_bytes_received,
                                &tcp_retransmit_packets,
                                &tcp_packets_queued,
                                &tcp_checksum_errors,
                                &tcp_socket_state,
                                &tcp_transmit_queue_depth,
                                &tcp_transmit_window,
                                &tcp_receive_window);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, TCP socket information was retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`, `nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_create`, `nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_send`, `nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_get

Get MSS of socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_mss_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, ULONG *mss);
```

## Description

This service retrieves the specified socket's local Maximum Segment Size (MSS).

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created socket.
mss	Destination for returning MSS.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful MSS get.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket or MSS destination pointer.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	TCP is not enabled.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Caller is not a thread or initialization.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Get the MSS for the socket "my_socket". */
status = nx_tcp_socket_mss_get(&my_socket, &mss_value);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the "mss_value" variable contains the
   socket's current MSS value. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

## nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_peer\_get

Get MSS of the peer TCP socket

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,  
                                ULONG *mss);
```

### Description

This service retrieves the Maximum Segment Size (MSS) advertised by the peer socket.

### Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created and connected socket.
mss	Destination for returning the MSS.

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful peer MSS get.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket or MSS destination pointer.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	TCP is not enabled.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Caller is not a thread or initialization.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Get the MSS of the connected peer to the socket "my_socket". */
status = nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get(&my_socket, &mss_value);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the "mss_value" variable contains the
   socket peer's advertised MSS value. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_socket\_create,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect\_complete\_notify,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_establish\_notify, nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_get,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_peer\_info\_get,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_notify, nx\_tcp\_socket\_timed\_wait\_callback,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_transmit\_configure,  
nx\_tcp\_socket\_window\_update\_notify\_set

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_set

Set MSS of socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_mss_set(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, ULONG mss);
```

## Description

This service sets the specified socket's Maximum Segment Size (MSS). Note the MSS value must be within the network interface IP MTU, allowing room for IP and TCP headers.

This service should be used before a TCP socket starts the connection process. If the service is used after a TCP connection is established, the new value has no effect on the connection.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created socket.
mss	Value of MSS to set.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful MSS set.
NX_SIZE_ERROR	(0x09)	Specified MSS value is too large.
NX_NOT_CONNECTED	(0x38)	TCP connection has not been established
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	TCP is not enabled.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Caller is not a thread or initialization.



## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Set the MSS of the socket "my_socket" to 1000 bytes. */  
status = nx_tcp_socket_mss_set(&my_socket, 1000);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the MSS of "my_socket" is 1000 bytes. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_peer\_info\_get

Retrieve information about peer TCP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                ULONG *peer_ip_address,
                                ULONG *peer_port);
```

## Description

This service retrieves peer IP address and port information for the connected TCP socket over IP network.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket.
peer_ip_address	Pointer to destination for peer IP address, in host byte order.
peer_port	Pointer to destination for peer port number, in host byte order.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Service executes successfully. Peer IP address and port number are returned to the caller.
NX_NOT_CONNECTED	(0x38)	Socket is not in a connected state.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pointers.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	TCP is not enabled.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Obtain peer IP address and port on the specified TCP socket. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get(&my_socket, &peer_ip_address,
                                     &peer_port);

/* If status = NX_SUCCESS, the data was successfully obtained. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive

Receive data from TCP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_receive(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                           NX_PACKET **packet_ptr,
                           ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service receives TCP data from the specified socket. If no data is queued on the specified socket, the caller suspends based on the supplied wait option.



*If NX\_SUCCESS is returned, the application is responsible for releasing the received packet when it is no longer needed.*

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket instance.
packet_ptr	Pointer to TCP packet pointer.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if do data are currently queued on this socket. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket data receive.
NX_NOT_BOUND	(0x24)	Socket is not bound yet.
NX_NO_PACKET	(0x01)	No data received.
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to tx_thread_wait_abort.

<b>NX_NOT_CONNECTED</b>	(0x38)	The socket is no longer connected.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket or return packet pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Receive a packet from the previously created and connected TCP
   client socket. If no packet is available, wait for 200 timer
   ticks before giving up. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_receive(&client_socket, &packet_ptr, 200);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the received packet is pointed to by
   "packet_ptr". */

```

**See Also**

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect,  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind,  
 nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_tcp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten, nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_create, nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_send, nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_notify

Notify application of received packets

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, VOID
                                (*tcp_receive_notify)
                                (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr));
```

## Description

This service configures the receive notify function pointer with the callback function specified by the application. This callback function is then called whenever one or more packets are received on the socket. If a NX\_NULL pointer is supplied, the notify function is disabled.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to the TCP socket.
tcp_receive_notify	Application callback function pointer that is called when one or more packets are received on the socket.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket receive notify.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	TCP feature is not enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Setup a receive packet callback function for the "client_socket"
   socket. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify(&client_socket,
                                      my_receive_notify);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, NetX will call the function named
   "my_receive_notify" whenever one or more packets are received for
   "client_socket". */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_send


Send data through a TCP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_send(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                        NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                        ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service sends TCP data through a previously connected TCP socket. If the receiver's last advertised window size is less than this request, the service optionally suspends based on the wait option specified. This service guarantees that no packet data larger than MSS is sent to the IP layer.

 *Unless an error is returned, the application should not release the packet after this call. Doing so will cause unpredictable results because the network driver will also try to release the packet after transmission.*

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously connected TCP socket instance.
packet_ptr	TCP data packet pointer.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if the request is greater than the window size of the receiver. The wait options are defined as follows: <div><div>NX_NO_WAIT</div><div>(0x00000000)</div><div>NX_WAIT_FOREVER</div><div>(0xFFFFFFFF)</div><div>timeout value</div><div>(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)</div></div>



**Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket send.
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	Socket was not bound to any port.
<b>NX_NO_INTERFACE_ADDRESS</b>	(0x50)	No suitable outgoing interface found.
<b>NX_NOT_CONNECTED</b>	(0x38)	Socket is no longer connected.
<b>NX_WINDOW_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x39)	Request is greater than receiver's advertised window size in bytes.
<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_INVALID_PACKET</b>	(0x12)	Packet is not allocated.
<b>NX_TX_QUEUE_DEPTH</b>	(0x49)	Maximum transmit queue depth has been reached.
<b>NX_OVERFLOW</b>	(0x03)	Packet append pointer is invalid.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
<b>NX_UNDERFLOW</b>	(0x02)	Packet prepend pointer is invalid.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Send a packet out on the previously created and connected TCP
   socket. If the receive window on the other side of the connection
   is less than the packet size, wait 200 timer ticks before giving
   up. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_send(&client_socket, packet_ptr, 200);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the packet has been sent! */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_client_socket_bind`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect`,  
`nx_tcp_client_socket_port_get`, `nx_tcp_client_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_free_port_find`, `nx_tcp_info_get`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_accept`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_listen`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_relisten`, `nx_tcp_server_socket_unaccept`,  
`nx_tcp_server_socket_unlisten`, `nx_tcp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_create`, `nx_tcp_socket_delete`, `nx_tcp_socket_disconnect`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_max_set`, `nx_tcp_socket_state_wait`



# nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait

Wait for TCP socket to enter specific state

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_state_wait(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                              UINT desired_state,
                              ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service waits for the socket to enter the desired state. If the socket is not in the desired state, the service suspends according to the supplied wait option.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously connected TCP socket instance.
desired_state	Desired TCP state. Valid TCP socket states are defined as follows: <div><div>NX_TCP_CLOSED(0x01)</div><div>NX_TCP_LISTEN_STATE(0x02)</div><div>NX_TCP_SYN_SENT(0x03)</div><div>NX_TCP_SYN_RECEIVED(0x04)</div><div>NX_TCP_ESTABLISHED(0x05)</div><div>NX_TCP_CLOSE_WAIT(0x06)</div><div>NX_TCP_FIN_WAIT_1(0x07)</div><div>NX_TCP_FIN_WAIT_2(0x08)</div><div>NX_TCP_CLOSING(0x09)</div><div>NX_TCP_TIMED_WAIT(0x0A)</div><div>NX_TCP_LAST_ACK(0x0B)</div></div>
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if the requested state is not present. The wait options are defined as follows: <div><div>NX_NO_WAIT(0x00000000)</div><div>NX_WAIT_FOREVER(0xFFFFFFFF)</div><div>timeout value(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)</div></div>

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful state wait.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.

<b>NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL</b>	(0x43)	State not present within the specified wait time.
<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0A)	The desired socket state is invalid.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Wait 300 timer ticks for the previously created socket to enter
   the established state in the TCP state machine. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_state_wait(&client_socket,
                                   NX_TCP_ESTABLISHED, 300);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the socket is now in the established
   state! */

```

**See Also**

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect,  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind,  
 nx\_tcp\_enable, nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_tcp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten, nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept,  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten, nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_create, nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete, nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_queue\_max\_set, nx\_tcp\_socket\_send

## nx\_tcp\_socket\_timed\_wait\_callback

---

Install callback for timed wait state

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                       VOID (*tcp_timed_wait_callback)
                                       (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr))
```

### Description

This service registers a callback function which is invoked when the TCP socket is in timed wait state. To use this service, the NetX library must be built with the option ***NX\_ENABLE\_EXTENDED\_NOTIFY*** defined.

### Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously connected client or server socket instance.
tcp_timed_wait_callback	The timed wait callback function

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successfully registers the callback function socket
<b>NX_NOT_SUPPORTED</b>	(0x4B)	NetX library is built without the extended notify feature enabled.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	TCP feature is not enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Install the timed wait callback function */  
nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback(&client_socket, callback);
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

# nx\_tcp\_socket\_transmit\_configure

Configure socket's transmit parameters

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                      ULONG max_queue_depth,
                                      ULONG timeout,
                                      ULONG max_retries,
                                      ULONG timeout_shift);
```

## Description

This service configures various transmit parameters of the specified TCP socket.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to the TCP socket.
max_queue_depth	Maximum number of packets allowed to be queued for transmission.
timeout	Number of ThreadX timer ticks an ACK is waited for before the packet is sent again.
max_retries	Maximum number of retries allowed.
timeout_shift	Value to shift the timeout for each subsequent retry. A value of 0, results in the same timeout between successive retries. A value of 1, doubles the timeout between retries.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful transmit socket configure.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
NX_OPTION_ERROR	(0x0a)	Invalid queue depth option.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	TCP feature is not enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads



## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Configure the "client_socket" for a maximum transmit queue depth
   of 12, 100 tick timeouts, a maximum of 20 retries, and a timeout
   double on each successive retry. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure(&client_socket,12,100,20,
                                          1);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the socket's transmit retry has been
   configured. */
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set`

# **nx\_tcp\_socket\_window\_update\_notify\_set**

Notify application of window size updates

## **Prototype**

```
UINT nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set(NX_TCP_SOCKET
                                             *socket_ptr,
                                             VOID (*tcp_window_update_notify)
                                             (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr))
```

## **Description**

This service installs a socket window update callback routine. This routine is called automatically whenever the specified socket receives a packet indicating an increase in the window size of the remote host.

## **Parameters**

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created TCP socket.
tcp_window_update_notify	Callback routine to be called when the window size changes. A value of NULL disables the window change update.

## **Return Values**

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Callback routine is installed on the socket.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pointers.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	TCP feature is not enabled.

## **Allowed From**

Initialization, threads

## **Preemption Possible**

No

## Example

```
/* Set the function pointer to the windows update callback after creating the
   socket. */
status = nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set(&data_socket,
                                                my_windows_update_callback);
/* Define the window callback function in the host application. */
void my_windows_update_callback(NX_TCP_SOCKET *data_socket)
{
    /* Process update on increase TCP transmit socket window size. */
    return;
}
```

## See Also

`nx_tcp_enable`, `nx_tcp_socket_create`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_get`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_mss_set`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get`, `nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify`,  
`nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback`, `nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure`



## Example

```
/* Enable UDP on the previously created IP instance. */
status = nx_udp_enable(&ip_0);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, UDP is now enabled on the specified IP
   instance. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`, `nx_udp_packet_info_extract`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bind`, `nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_create`, `nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find


Find next available UDP port

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_free_port_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT port,
                           UINT *free_port_ptr);
```

## Description

This service looks for a free UDP port (unbound) starting from the application supplied port number. The search logic will wrap around if the search reaches the maximum port value of 0xFFFF. If the search is successful, the free port is returned in the variable pointed to by *free\_port\_ptr*.

 *This service can be called from another thread and can have the same port returned. To prevent this race condition, the application may wish to place this service and the actual socket bind under the protection of a mutex.*

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
port	Port number to start search (1 through 0xFFFF).
free_port_ptr	Pointer to the destination free port return variable.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful free port find.
<b>NX_NO_FREE_PORTS</b>	(0x45)	No free ports found.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	Specified port number is invalid.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
/* Locate a free UDP port, starting at port 12, on a previously
   created IP instance. */
status = nx_udp_free_port_find(&ip_0, 12, &free_port);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS pointer, "free_port" identifies the next
   free UDP port on the IP instance. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_udp\_enable, nx\_udp\_info\_get, nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract,  
nx\_udp\_socket\_bind, nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available,  
nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable, nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable,  
nx\_udp\_socket\_create, nx\_udp\_socket\_delete, nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get,  
nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_udp\_socket\_receive,  
nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify, nx\_udp\_socket\_send,  
nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send, nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind,  
nx\_udp\_source\_extract

## nx\_udp\_info\_get

Retrieve information about UDP activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                    ULONG *udp_packets_sent,
                    ULONG *udp_bytes_sent,
                    ULONG *udp_packets_received,
                    ULONG *udp_bytes_received,
                    ULONG *udp_invalid_packets,
                    ULONG *udp_receive_packets_dropped,
                    ULONG *udp_checksum_errors);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about UDP activities for the specified IP instance.

**i**

*If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.*

### Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
udp_packets_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of UDP packets sent.
udp_bytes_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of UDP bytes sent.
udp_packets_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP packets received.
udp_bytes_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP bytes received.
udp_invalid_packets	Pointer to destination of the total number of invalid UDP packets.
udp_receive_packets_dropped	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP receive packets dropped.
udp_checksum_errors	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP packets with checksum errors.



## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful UDP information retrieval.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, and timers

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Retrieve UDP information from previously created IP Instance
   ip_0. */
status = nx_udp_info_get(&ip_0, &udp_packets_sent,
                        &udp_bytes_sent,
                        &udp_packets_received,
                        &udp_bytes_received,
                        &udp_invalid_packets,
                        &udp_receive_packets_dropped,
                        &udp_checksum_errors);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, UDP information was retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_packet_info_extract`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bind`, `nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_create`, `nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract

Extract network parameters from UDP packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_packet_info_extract(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                                ULONG *ip_address,
                                UINT *protocol,
                                UINT *port,
                                UINT *interface_index);
```

## Description

This service extracts network parameters, such as IP address, peer port number, protocol type (this service always returns UDP type) from a packet received on an incoming interface.

## Parameters

packet_ptr	Pointer to packet.
ip_address	Pointer to sender IP address.
protocol	Pointer to protocol (UDP).
port	Pointer to sender's port number.
interface_index	Pointer to receiving interface index.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Packet interface data successfully extracted.
NX_INVALID_PACKET	(0x12)	Packet does not contain IP frame.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pointer input
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Extract network data from UDP packet interface.*/
status = nx_udp_packet_info_extract( packet_ptr, &ip_address,
                                     &protocol, &port,
                                     &interface_index)

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS packet data was successfully
   retrieved. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bind`, `nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_create`, `nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_socket\_bind

Bind UDP socket to UDP port

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_bind(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, UINT port,
                        ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service binds the previously created UDP socket to the specified UDP port. Valid UDP sockets range from 0 through 0xFFFF. If the requested port number is bound to another socket, this service waits for specified period of time for the socket to unbind from the port number.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
port	Port number to bind to (1 through 0xFFFF). If port number is NX_ANY_PORT (0x0000), the IP instance will search for the next free port and use that for the binding.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if the port is already bound to another socket. The wait options are defined as follows: NX_NO_WAIT (0x00000000) NX_WAIT_FOREVER (0xFFFFFFFF) timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket bind.
NX_ALREADY_BOUND	(0x22)	This socket is already bound to another port.
NX_PORT_UNAVAILABLE	(0x23)	Port is already bound to a different socket.
NX_NO_FREE_PORTS	(0x45)	No free port.

<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_INVALID_PORT</b>	(0x46)	Invalid port specified.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Bind the previously created UDP socket to port 12 on the
   previously created IP instance. If the port is already bound,
   wait for 300 timer ticks before giving up. */
status = nx_udp_socket_bind(&udp_socket, 12, 300);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the UDP socket is now bound to
   port 12.*/

```

**See Also**

nx\_udp\_enable, nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_udp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract, nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable, nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_create, nx\_udp\_socket\_delete, nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_udp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify, nx\_udp\_socket\_send,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send, nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind,  
 nx\_udp\_source\_extract

# nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available

Retrieves number of bytes available for retrieval

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_bytes_available(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                   ULONG *bytes_available);
```

## Description

This service retrieves number of bytes available for reception in the specified UDP socket.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket.
bytes_available	Pointer to destination for bytes available.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful bytes available retrieval.
NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL	(0x43)	Socket not bound to a port.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pointers.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	UDP feature is not enabled.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Get the bytes available for retrieval from the UDP socket. */
status = nx_udp_socket_bytes_available(&my_socket,
                                       &bytes_available);

/* If status == NX_SUCCESS, the number of bytes was successfully
   retrieved.*/
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_create`, `nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable

Disable checksum for UDP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

## Description

This service disables the checksum logic for sending and receiving packets on the specified UDP socket. When the checksum logic is disabled, a value of zero is loaded into the UDP header's checksum field for all packets sent through this socket. A zero-value checksum value in the UDP header signals the receiver that checksum is not computed for this packet.

Also note that this has no effect if ***NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_RX\_CHECKSUM*** and ***NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_TX\_CHECKSUM*** are defined when receiving and sending UDP packets respectively,

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
------------	--

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket checksum disable.
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	Socket is not bound.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timer

## Preemption Possible

No



## Example

```
/* Disable the UDP checksum logic for packets sent on this socket. */
status = nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable(&udp_socket);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, outgoing packets will not have a checksum
   calculated. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_create`, `nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable

Enable checksum for UDP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

## Description

This service enables the checksum logic for sending and receiving packets on the specified UDP socket. The checksum covers the entire UDP data area as well as a pseudo IP header.

Also note that this has no effect if **NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_RX\_CHECKSUM** and **NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_TX\_CHECKSUM** are defined when receiving and sending UDP packets respectively.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
------------	--

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket checksum enable.
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	Socket is not bound.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timer

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Enable the UDP checksum logic for packets sent on this socket. */  
status = nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable(&udp_socket);  
  
/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, outgoing packets will have a checksum  
   calculated. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_create`, `nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_socket\_create

Create UDP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                          NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr, CHAR *name,
                          ULONG type_of_service, ULONG fragment,
                          UINT time_to_live, ULONG queue_maximum);
```

## Description

This service creates a UDP socket for the specified IP instance.

## Parameters

ip_ptr	Pointer to previously created IP instance.
socket_ptr	Pointer to new UDP socket control bloc.
name	Application name for this UDP socket.
type_of_service	Defines the type of service for the transmission, legal values are as follows: NX_IP_NORMAL (0x00000000) NX_IP_MIN_DELAY (0x00100000) NX_IP_MAX_DATA (0x00080000) NX_IP_MAX_RELIABLE (0x00040000) NX_IP_MIN_COST (0x00020000)
fragment	Specifies whether or not IP fragmenting is allowed. If NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY (0x0) is specified, IP fragmenting is allowed. If NX_DONT_FRAGMENT (0x4000) is specified, IP fragmenting is disabled.
time_to_live	Specifies the 8-bit value that defines how many routers this packet can pass before being thrown away. The default value is specified by NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE.
queue_maximum	Defines the maximum number of UDP datagrams that can be queued for this socket. After the queue limit is reached, for every new packet received the oldest UDP packet is released.

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful UDP socket create.
<b>NX_OPTION_ERROR</b>	(0x0A)	Invalid type-of-service, fragment, or time-to-live option.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid IP or socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization and Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Create a UDP socket with a maximum receive queue of 30 packets.*/
status = nx_udp_socket_create(&ip_0, &udp_socket, "Sample UDP
                                Socket",
                                NX_IP_NORMAL, NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY, 0x80,
                                30);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the new UDP socket has been created and
   is ready for binding. */
```

## See Also

nx\_udp\_enable, nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_udp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract, nx\_udp\_socket\_bind,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable, nx\_udp\_socket\_delete,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get, nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive, nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_send, nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind, nx\_udp\_source\_extract

# nx\_udp\_socket\_delete

Delete UDP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_delete(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes a previously created UDP socket. If the socket was bound to a port, the socket must be unbound first.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
------------	--

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket delete.
<b>NX_STILL_BOUND</b>	(0x42)	Socket is still bound.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Delete a previously created UDP socket. */
status = nx_udp_socket_delete(&udp_socket);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the previously created UDP socket has
   been deleted. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`, `nx_udp_socket_create`,  
`nx_udp_socket_info_get`, `nx_udp_socket_port_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive`, `nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`,  
`nx_udp_socket_send`, `nx_udp_socket_interface_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_unbind`, `nx_udp_source_extract`

## nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get

Retrieve information about UDP socket activities

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_info_get(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                             ULONG *udp_packets_sent,
                             ULONG *udp_bytes_sent,
                             ULONG *udp_packets_received,
                             ULONG *udp_bytes_received,
                             ULONG *udp_packets_queued,
                             ULONG *udp_receive_packets_dropped,
                             ULONG *udp_checksum_errors);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about UDP socket activities for the specified UDP socket instance.

*i* If a destination pointer is NX\_NULL, that particular information is not returned to the caller.

### Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
udp_packets_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of UDP packets sent on socket.
udp_bytes_sent	Pointer to destination for the total number of UDP bytes sent on socket.
udp_packets_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP packets received on socket.
udp_bytes_received	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP bytes received on socket.
udp_packets_queued	Pointer to destination of the total number of queued UDP packets on socket.
udp_receive_packets_dropped	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP receive packets dropped for socket due to queue size being exceeded.
udp_checksum_errors	Pointer to destination of the total number of UDP packets with checksum errors on socket.



## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful UDP socket information retrieval.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, and timers

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Retrieve UDP socket information from socket 0.*/
status = nx_udp_socket_info_get(&socket_0,
                                &udp_packets_sent,
                                &udp_bytes_sent,
                                &udp_packets_received,
                                &udp_bytes_received,
                                &udp_queued_packets,
                                &udp_receive_packets_dropped,
                                &udp_checksum_errors);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, UDP socket information was retrieved.*/
```

## See Also

nx\_udp\_enable, nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_udp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract, nx\_udp\_socket\_bind,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable, nx\_udp\_socket\_create,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_delete, nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive, nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_send, nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind, nx\_udp\_source\_extract

## nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get

Pick up port number bound to UDP socket

### Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_port_get(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                           UINT *port_ptr);
```

### Description

This service retrieves the port number associated with the socket, which is useful to find the port allocated by NetX in situations where the NX\_ANY\_PORT was specified at the time the socket was bound.

### Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
port_ptr	Pointer to destination for the return port number. Valid port numbers are (1- 0xFFFF).

### Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket bind.
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	This socket is not bound to a port.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer or port return pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Get the port number of created and bound UDP socket. */
status = nx_udp_socket_port_get(&udp_socket, &port);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the port variable contains the port this
   socket is bound to. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`, `nx_udp_socket_create`,  
`nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive`, `nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`,  
`nx_udp_socket_send`, `nx_udp_socket_interface_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_unbind`, `nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_socket\_receive

Receive datagram from UDP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_receive(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                           NX_PACKET **packet_ptr,
                           ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service receives an UDP datagram from the specified socket. If no datagram is queued on the specified socket, the caller suspends based on the supplied wait option.



*If NX\_SUCCESS is returned, the application is responsible for releasing the received packet when it is no longer needed.*

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
packet_ptr	Pointer to UDP datagram packet pointer.
wait_option	Defines how the service behaves if a datagram is not currently queued on this socket. The wait options are defined as follows: <div><div><div>NX_NO_WAIT</div><div>(0x00000000)</div></div><div><div>NX_WAIT_FOREVER</div><div>(0xFFFFFFFF)</div></div><div><div>timeout value</div><div>(0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)</div></div></div>

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful socket receive.
NX_NOT_BOUND	(0x24)	Socket was not bound to any port.
NX_NO_PACKET	(0x01)	There was no UDP datagram to receive.

<b>NX_WAIT_ABORTED</b>	(0x1A)	Requested suspension was aborted by a call to <i>tx_thread_wait_abort</i> .
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket or packet return pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

/* Receive a packet from a previously created and bound UDP socket.
   If no packets are currently available, wait for 500 timer ticks
   before giving up. */
status = nx_udp_socket_receive(&udp_socket, &packet_ptr, 500);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the received UDP packet is pointed to by
   packet_ptr. */

```

**See Also**

nx\_udp\_enable, nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_udp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract, nx\_udp\_socket\_bind,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable, nx\_udp\_socket\_create,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_delete, nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_send, nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind, nx\_udp\_source\_extract

# nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify

Notify application of each received packet

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_receive_notify(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                  VOID (*udp_receive_notify)
                                  (NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr));
```

## Description

This service sets the receive notify function pointer to the callback function specified by the application. This callback function is then called whenever a packet is received on the socket. If a NX\_NULL pointer is supplied, the receive notify function is disabled.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to the UDP socket.
udp_receive_notify	Application callback function pointer that is called when a packet is received on the socket.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successfully set socket receive notify function.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Setup a receive packet callback function for the "udp_socket"
   socket. */
status = nx_udp_socket_receive_notify(&udp_socket,
                                      my_receive_notify);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, NetX will call the function named
   "my_receive_notify" whenever a packet is received for
   "udp_socket". */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`, `nx_udp_socket_create`,  
`nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`,  
`nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_socket\_send

Send a UDP Datagram

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_send(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                        NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                        ULONG ip_address,
                        UINT port);
```

## Description

This service sends a UDP datagram through a previously created and bound UDP socket. NetX finds a suitable local IP address as source address based on the destination IP address. To specify a specific interface and source IP address, the application should use the **nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send** service.

Note that this service returns immediately regardless of whether the UDP datagram was successfully sent.

The socket must be bound to a local port.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance
packet_ptr	UDP datagram packet pointer
ip_address	Destination IP address
port	Valid destination port number between 1 and 0xFFFF, in host byte order

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful UDP socket send
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	Socket not bound to any port
<b>NX_NO_INTERFACE_ADDRESS</b>	(0x50)	No suitable outgoing interface can be found.
<b>NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR</b>	(0x21)	Invalid server IP address
<b>NX_UNDERFLOW</b>	(0x02)	Not enough room for UDP header in the packet



<code>NX_OVERFLOW</code>	<code>(0x03)</code>	Packet append pointer is invalid
<code>NX_PTR_ERROR</code>	<code>(0x07)</code>	Invalid socket pointer
<code>NX_CALLER_ERROR</code>	<code>(0x11)</code>	Invalid caller of this service
<code>NX_NOT_ENABLED</code>	<code>(0x14)</code>	UDP has not been enabled
<code>NX_INVALID_PORT</code>	<code>(0x46)</code>	Port number is not within a valid range

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```

ULONG  server_address;

/* Set the UDP Client IP address. */
server_address = IP_ADDRESS(1,2,3,5);

/* Send a packet to the UDP server at server_address on port 12. */
status = nx_udp_socket_send(&client_socket, packet_ptr,
                           server_address, 12);

/* If status == NX_SUCCESS, the application successfully transmitted
   the packet out the UDP socket to its peer. */

```

**See Also**

```

nx_udp_enable, nx_udp_free_port_find, nx_udp_info_get,
nx_udp_packet_info_extract, nx_udp_socket_bind,
nx_udp_socket_bytes_available, nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable,
nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable, nx_udp_socket_create,
nx_udp_socket_delete, nx_udp_socket_info_get,
nx_udp_socket_port_get, nx_udp_socket_receive,
nx_udp_socket_receive_notify, nx_udp_socket_interface_send,
nx_udp_socket_unbind, nx_udp_source_extract

```

# nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send

Send datagram through UDP socket

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_interface_send(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                  NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                                  ULONG ip_address,
                                  UINT port,
                                  UINT address_index);
```

## Description

This service sends a UDP datagram through a previously created and bound UDP socket through the network interface with the specified IP address as the source address. Note that service returns immediately, regardless of whether or not the UDP datagram was successfully sent.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Socket to transmit the packet out on.
packet_ptr	Pointer to packet to transmit.
ip_address	Destination IP address to send packet.
port	Destination port.
address_index	Index of the address associated with the interface to send packet on.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Packet successfully sent.
NX_NOT_BOUND	(0x24)	Socket not bound to a port.
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	(0x21)	Invalid IP address.
NX_NOT_ENABLED	(0x14)	UDP processing not enabled.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid pointer.
NX_OVERFLOW	(0x03)	Invalid packet append pointer.
NX_UNDERFLOW	(0x02)	Invalid packet prepend pointer.
NX_CALLER_ERROR	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.

NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	(0x4C)	Invalid address index.
NX_INVALID_PORT	(0x46)	Port number exceeds maximum port number.

**Allowed From**

Threads

**Preemption Possible**

No

**Example**

```
#define ADDRESS_INDEX 1
/* Send packet out on port 80 to the specified destination IP on the
   interface at index 1 in the IP task interface list. */

status = nx_udp_packet_interface_send(socket_ptr, packet_ptr,
                                     destination_ip, 80,
                                     ADDRESS_INDEX);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS packet was successfully transmitted. */
```

**See Also**

nx\_udp\_enable, nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find, nx\_udp\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract, nx\_udp\_socket\_bind,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available, nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable, nx\_udp\_socket\_create,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_delete, nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get, nx\_udp\_socket\_receive,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify, nx\_udp\_socket\_send,  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind

# nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind

Unbind UDP socket from UDP port

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_socket_unbind(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);
```

## Description

This service releases the binding between the UDP socket and a UDP port. Any received packets stored in the receive queue are released as part of the unbind operation.

If there are other threads waiting to bind another socket to the unbound port, the first suspended thread is then bound to the newly unbound port.

## Parameters

socket_ptr	Pointer to previously created UDP socket instance.
------------	--

## Return Values

<b>NX_SUCCESS</b>	(0x00)	Successful socket unbind.
<b>NX_NOT_BOUND</b>	(0x24)	Socket was not bound to any port.
<b>NX_PTR_ERROR</b>	(0x07)	Invalid socket pointer.
<b>NX_CALLER_ERROR</b>	(0x11)	Invalid caller of this service.
<b>NX_NOT_ENABLED</b>	(0x14)	This component has not been enabled.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
/* Unbind the previously bound UDP socket. */
status = nx_udp_socket_unbind(&udp_socket);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the previously bound socket is now
   unbound. */
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`, `nx_udp_socket_create`,  
`nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_source_extract`

# nx\_udp\_source\_extract

Extract IP and sending port from UDP datagram

## Prototype

```
UINT nx_udp_source_extract(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                           ULONG *ip_address, UINT *port);
```

## Description

This service extracts the sender's IP and port number from the IP and UDP headers of the supplied UDP datagram.

## Parameters

packet_ptr	UDP datagram packet pointer.
ip_address	Valid pointer to the return IP address variable.
port	Valid pointer to the return port variable.

## Return Values

NX_SUCCESS	(0x00)	Successful source IP/port extraction.
NX_INVALID_PACKET	(0x12)	The supplied packet is invalid.
NX_PTR_ERROR	(0x07)	Invalid packet or IP or port destination.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, ISR

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
/* Extract the IP and port information from the sender of the UDP
   packet. */
status = nx_udp_source_extract(packet_ptr, &sender_ip_address,
&sender_port);

/* If status is NX_SUCCESS, the sender IP and port information has
   been stored in sender_ip_address and sender_port respectively.*/
```

## See Also

`nx_udp_enable`, `nx_udp_free_port_find`, `nx_udp_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_packet_info_extract`, `nx_udp_socket_bind`,  
`nx_udp_socket_bytes_available`, `nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable`,  
`nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable`, `nx_udp_socket_create`,  
`nx_udp_socket_delete`, `nx_udp_socket_info_get`,  
`nx_udp_socket_port_get`, `nx_udp_socket_receive`,  
`nx_udp_socket_receive_notify`, `nx_udp_socket_send`,  
`nx_udp_socket_interface_send`, `nx_udp_socket_unbind`





# *NetX Network Drivers*

---

This chapter contains a description of network drivers for NetX. The information presented is designed to help developers write application-specific network drivers for NetX. The following topics are covered:

- Driver Introduction 354
- Driver Entry 354
- Driver Requests 355
  - Driver Initialization 355
  - Enable Link 357
  - Disable Link 357
  - Uninitialize Link 358
  - Packet Send 359
  - Packet Broadcast 360
  - ARP Send 361
  - ARP Response Send 361
  - RARP Send 362
  - Multicast Group Join 363
  - Multicast Group Leave 364
  - Attach Interface 364
  - Detach Interface 365
  - Get Link Status 365
  - Get Link Speed 366
  - Get Duplex Type 367
  - Get Error Count 367
  - Get Receive Packet Count 368
  - Get Transmit Packet Count 369
  - Get Allocation Errors 369
  - Driver Deferred Processing 370
  - User Commands 370
  - Unimplemented Commands 371
- Driver Output 371
- Driver Input 372
  - Deferred Receive Packet Handling 374
- Example RAM Ethernet Network Driver 374

## Driver Introduction

The `NX_IP` structure contains everything to manage a single IP instance. This includes general TCP/IP protocol information as well as the application-specific physical network driver's entry routine. The driver's entry routine is defined during the **`nx_ip_create`** service. Additional devices may be added to the IP instance via the **`nx_ip_interface_attach`** service.

Communication between NetX and the application's network driver is accomplished through the **`NX_IP_DRIVER`** request structure. This structure is most often defined locally on the caller's stack and is therefore released after the driver and calling function return. The structure is defined as follows:

```
typedef struct NX_IP_DRIVER_STRUCT
{
    UINT          nx_ip_driver_command;
    UINT          nx_ip_driver_status;
    ULONG         nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw;
    ULONG         nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw;
    NX_PACKET     *nx_ip_driver_packet;
    ULONG         *nx_ip_driver_return_ptr;
    NX_IP         *nx_ip_driver_ptr;
    NX_INTERFACE  *nx_ip_driver_interface;
} NX_IP_DRIVER;
```

## Driver Entry

NetX invokes the network driver entry function for driver initialization and for sending packets and for various control and status operations, including initializing and enabling the network device. NetX issues commands to the network driver by setting the **`nx_ip_driver_command`** field in the **`NX_IP_DRIVER`** request structure. The driver entry function has the following format:

```
VOID my_driver_entry(NX_IP_DRIVER *request);
```

## Driver Requests

NetX creates the driver request with a specific command and invokes the driver entry function to execute the command. Because each network driver has a single entry function, NetX makes all requests through the driver request data structure. The ***nx\_ip\_driver\_command*** member of the driver request data structure (***NX\_IP\_DRIVER***) defines the request. Status information is reported back to the caller in the member ***nx\_ip\_driver\_status***. If this field is ***NX\_SUCCESS***, the driver request was completed successfully.

NetX serializes all access to the driver. Therefore, the driver does not need to handle multiple threads asynchronously calling the entry function. Note that the device driver function executes with the IP mutex locked. Therefore the device driver internal function shall not block itself.

Typically the device driver also handles interrupts. Therefore, all driver functions need to be interrupt-safe.

## Driver Initialization

Although the actual driver initialization processing is application specific, it usually consists of data structure and physical hardware initialization. The information required from NetX for driver initialization is the IP Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU), which is the number of bytes available to the IP-layer payload, including IP header) and if the physical interface needs logical-to-physical mapping. The driver needs to configure the interface MTU by setting the value in ***nx\_interface\_ip\_mtu\_size*** in the ***NX\_INTERFACE*** structure.

The device driver also needs to set up the value in ***nx\_ip\_interface\_address\_mapping\_needed*** in ***NX\_INTERFACE*** to inform NetX whether or not interface address mapping is required. If address

mapping is needed, the driver is responsible for configuring the interface with valid MAC address, and supply the MAC address to NetX.

When the network driver receives the NX\_LINK INITIALIZE request from NetX, it receives a pointer to the IP control block as part of the NX\_IP\_DRIVER request control block shown above.

After the application calls ***nx\_ip\_create***, the IP helper thread sends a driver request with the command set to NX\_LINK\_INITIALIZE to the driver to initialize its physical network interface. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the initialize request.

<b>NX_IP_DRIVER member</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<code>nx_ip_driver_command</code>	NX_LINK_INITIALIZE
<code>nx_ip_driver_ptr</code>	Pointer to the IP instance. This value should be saved by the driver so that the driver function can find the IP instance to operate on.
<code>nx_ip_driver_interface</code>	Pointer to the network interface structure within the IP instance. This information should be saved by the driver. On receiving packets, the driver shall use the interface structure information when sending the packet up the stack.
<code>nx_ip_driver_status</code>	Completion status. If the driver is not able to initialize the specified interface to the IP instance, it will return a non-zero error status.

i

*Most of the driver commands are called from the IP helper thread that was created for the IP instance. Therefore the driver routine should avoid performing blocking operations, or the IP helper thread could*

*stall, causing unbounded delays to applications that rely on the IP thread.*

**Enable Link**

Next, the IP helper thread enables the physical network by setting the driver command to NX\_LINK\_ENABLE in the driver request and sending the request to the network driver. This happens shortly after the IP helper thread completes the initialization request. Enabling the link may be as simple as setting the *nx\_interface\_link\_up* field in the interface instance. But it may also involve manipulation of the physical hardware. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the enable link request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_ENABLE
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to enable the specified interface, it will return a non-zero error status.

**Disable Link**

This request is made by NetX during the deletion of an IP instance by the *nx\_ip\_delete* service. Or an application may issue this command in order to temporarily disable the link in order to save power. This service disables the physical network interface on the IP instance. The processing to disable the link may be as simple as clearing the *nx\_interface\_link\_up* flag in the interface instance. But it may also involve manipulation of the physical hardware. Typically it is a reverse operation of the

**Enable Link** operation. After the link is disabled, the application request **Enable Link** operation to enable the interface.

The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the disable link request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_DISABLE
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to disable the specified interface in the IP instance, it will return a non-zero error status.

## Uninitialize Link

This request is made by NetX during the deletion of an IP instance by the **nx\_ip\_delete** service. This request uninitialize the interface, and release any resources created during initialization phase. Typically it is a reverse operation of the **Initialize Link** operation. After the interface is uninitialized, the device cannot be used until the interface is initialized again.

The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the disable link request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_UNINITIALZE
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance

<b>NX_IP_DRIVER member</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<code>nx_ip_driver_interface</code>	Pointer to the interface instance
<code>nx_ip_driver_status</code>	Completion status. If the driver is not able to uninitialize the specified interface to the IP instance, it will return a non-zero error status.

**Packet Send**

This request is made during internal IP send processing, which all NetX protocols use to transmit packets (except for ARP, RARP). On receiving the packet send command, the *nx\_packet\_prepend\_ptr* points to the beginning of the packet to be sent, which is the beginning of the IP header. *nx\_packet\_length* indicates the total size (in bytes) of the data being transmitted. If *nx\_packet\_next* is valid, the outgoing IP datagram is stored in multiple packets, the driver is required to follow the chained packet and transmit the entire frame. Note that valid data area in each chained packet is stored between *nx\_packet\_prepend\_ptr* and *nx\_packet\_append\_ptr*.

The driver is responsible for constructing physical header. If physical address to IP address mapping is required (such as Ethernet), the IP layer already resolved the MAC address. The destination MAC address is passed from the IP instance, stored in *nx\_ip\_driver\_physical\_address\_msw* and *nx\_ip\_driver\_physical\_address\_lsw*.

After adding the physical header, the packet send processing then calls the driver's output function to transmit the packet.

The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the packet send request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_PACKET_SEND
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_packet	Pointer to the packet to send
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance.
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	Most significant 32-bits of physical address (only if physical mapping needed)
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	Least significant 32-bits of physical address (only if physical mapping needed)
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to send the packet, it will return a non-zero error status.

Packet Broadcast

This request is almost identical to the send packet request. The only difference is that the destination physical address fields are set to the Ethernet broadcast MAC address. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the packet broadcast request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_PACKET_BROADCAST
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_packet	Pointer to the packet to send
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	0x0000FFFF (broadcast)
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	0xFFFFFFFF (broadcast)



NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance.
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to send the packet, it will return a non-zero error status.

ARP Send

This request is also similar to the IP packet send request. The only difference is that the Ethernet header specifies an ARP packet instead of an IP packet, and destination physical address fields are set to MAC broadcast address. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the ARP send request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_ARP_SEND
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_packet	Pointer to the packet to send
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	0x0000FFFF (broadcast)
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	0xFFFFFFFF (broadcast)
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to send the ARP packet, it will return a non-zero error status.

*i*

*If physical mapping is not needed, implementation of this request is not required.*

ARP Response Send

This request is almost identical to the ARP send packet request. The only difference is the destination physical address fields are passed from the IP instance. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members

are used for the ARP response send request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_ARP_RESPONSE_SEND
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_packet	Pointer to the packet to send
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	Most significant 32-bits of physical address
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	Least significant 32-bits of physical address
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to send the ARP packet, it will return a non-zero error status.



*If physical mapping is not needed, implementation of this request is not required.*

## RARP Send

This request is almost identical to the ARP send packet request. The only differences are the type of packet header and the physical address fields are not required because the physical destination is always a broadcast address.

The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the RARP send request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_RARP_SEND
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_packet	Pointer to the packet to send
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	0x0000FFFF (broadcast)
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	0xFFFFFFFF (broadcast)

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to send the RARP packet, it will return a non-zero error status.



*Applications that require RARP service must implement this command.*

**Multicast Group Join**

This request is made with the ***nx\_igmp\_multicast\_interface\_join*** service. The network driver takes the supplied multicast group address and sets up the physical media to accept incoming packets from that multicast group address. Note that for drivers that don't support multicast filter, the driver receive logic may have to be in promiscuous mode. In this case, the driver may need to filter incoming frames based on destination MAC address, thus reducing the amount of traffic passed into the IP instance. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the multicast group join request.

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_MULTICAST_JOIN
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	Most significant 32-bits of physical multicast address
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	Least significant 32-bits of physical multicast address
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to join the multicast group, it will return a non-zero error status.

**Multicast Group  
Leave**

This request is invoked by explicitly calling the ***nx\_igmp\_multicast\_leave*** service. The driver removes the supplied Ethernet multicast address from the multicast list. After a host has left a multicast group, packets on the network with this Ethernet multicast address are no longer received by this IP instance. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the multicast group leave request:

<b>NX_IP_DRIVER member</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_MULTICAST_LEAVE
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw	Most significant 32 bits of physical multicast address
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw	Least significant 32 bits of physical multicast address
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to leave the multicast group, it will return a non-zero error status.

**Attach Interface**

This request is invoked from the NetX to the device driver, allowing the driver to associate the driver instance with the corresponding IP instance and the physical interface instance within the IP. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the attach interface request:

<b>NX_IP_DRIVER member</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_INTERFACE_ATTACH
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
<code>nx_ip_driver_interface</code>	Pointer to the interface instance.
<code>nx_ip_driver_status</code>	Completion status. If the driver is not able to detach the specified interface to the IP instance, it will return a non-zero error status.

**Detach Interface**

This request is invoked by NetX to the device driver, allowing the driver to disassociate the driver instance with the corresponding IP instance and the physical interface instance within the IP. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the attach interface request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
<code>nx_ip_driver_command</code>	NX_LINK_INTERFACE_DETACH
<code>nx_ip_driver_ptr</code>	Pointer to IP instance
<code>nx_ip_driver_interface</code>	Pointer to the interface instance.
<code>nx_ip_driver_status</code>	Completion status. If the driver is not able to attach the specified interface to the IP instance, it will return a non-zero error status.

**Get Link Status**

The application can query the network interface link status using the NetX service ***nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check*** service for any interface on the host. See Chapter 4, “Description of NetX Services” on page 107, for more details on these services.

The link status is contained in the ***nx\_interface\_link\_up*** field in the NX\_INTERFACE structure pointed to by ***nx\_ip\_driver\_interface*** pointer. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for

the link status request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_STATUS
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the status.
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get specific status, it will return a non-zero error status.

*i* ***nx\_ip\_status\_check*** is still available for checking the status of the primary interface. However, application developers are encouraged to use the interface specific service: ***nx\_ip\_interface\_status\_check***.

Get Link Speed

This request is made from within the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command*** service. The driver stores the link’s line speed in the supplied destination. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the link line speed request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_SPEED
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the line speed

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get speed information, it will return a non-zero error status.



*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

Get Duplex Type

This request is made from within the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command*** service. The driver stores the link’s duplex type in the supplied destination. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the duplex type request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_DUPLEX_TYPE
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the duplex type
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get duplex information, it will return a non-zero error status.



*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

Get Error Count

This request is made from within the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command*** service. The driver stores the link’s error count in the supplied

destination. To support this feature, the driver needs to track operation errors. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the link error count request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_ERROR_COUNT
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the error count
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get error count, it will return a non-zero error status.

i

*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

### Get Receive Packet Count

This request is made from within the **nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command** service. The driver stores the link's receive packet count in the supplied destination. To support this feature, the driver needs to keep track of the number of packets received. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the link receive packet count request:

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_RX_COUNT
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the receive packet count
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the physical network interface
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get receive count, it will return a non-zero error status.





*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

**Get Transmit  
Packet Count**

This request is made from within the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command*** service. The driver stores the link’s transmit packet count in the supplied destination. To support this feature, the driver needs to keep track of each packet it transmits on each interface. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the link transmit packet count request:

<b>NX_IP_DRIVER member</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_TX_COUNT
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the transmit packet count
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get transmit count, it will return a non-zero error status.



*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

**Get Allocation  
Errors**

This request is made from within the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command*** service. The driver stores the link’s packet pool allocation error count in the supplied destination. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the link allocation error count request:

<b>NX_IP_DRIVER member</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_GET_ALLOC_ERRORS
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	Pointer to the destination to place the allocation error count
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to get allocation errors, it will return a non-zero error status.



*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

**Driver Deferred Processing**

This request is made from the IP helper thread in response to the driver calling the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_deferred\_processing*** routine from a transmit or receive ISR. This allows the driver ISR to defer the packet receive and transmit processing to the IP helper thread and thus reduce the amount to process in the ISR. The ***nx\_interface\_additional\_link\_info*** field in the NX\_INTERFACE structure pointed to by ***nx\_ip\_driver\_interface*** may be used by the driver to store information about the deferred processing event from the IP helper thread context. The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the deferred processing event.

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_DEFERRED_PROCESSING
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance

**User Commands**

This request is made from within the ***nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command*** service. The driver processes the application specific user commands.

The following NX\_IP\_DRIVER members are used for the user command request.

NX_IP_DRIVER member	Meaning
nx_ip_driver_command	NX_LINK_USER_COMMAND
nx_ip_driver_ptr	Pointer to IP instance
nx_ip_driver_return_ptr	User defined
nx_ip_driver_interface	Pointer to the interface instance
nx_ip_driver_status	Completion status. If the driver is not able to execute user commands, it will return a non-zero error status.



*This request is not used internally by NetX so its implementation is optional.*

**Unimplemented Commands**

Commands unimplemented by the network driver must have the return status field set to NX\_UNHANDLED\_COMMAND.

**Driver Output**

All previously mentioned packet transmit requests require an output function implemented in the driver. Specific transmit logic is hardware specific, but it usually consists of checking for hardware capacity to send the packet immediately. If possible, the packet payload (and additional payloads in the packet chain) are loaded into one or more of the hardware transmit buffers and a transmit operation is initiated. If the packet won't fit in the available transmit buffers, the packet should be queued, and be transmitted when the transmission buffers become available.

The recommended transmit queue is a singly linked

list, having both head and tail pointers. New packets are added to the end of the queue, keeping the oldest packet at the front. The `nx_packet_queue_next` field is used as the packet's next link in the queue. The driver defines the head and tail pointers of the transmit queue.



*Because this queue is accessed from thread and interrupt portions of the driver, interrupt protection must be placed around the queue manipulations.*

Most physical hardware implementations generate an interrupt upon packet transmit completion. When the driver receives such an interrupt, it typically releases the resources associated with the packet just being transmitted. In case the transmit logic reads data directly from the `NX_PACKET` buffer, the driver should use the **`nx_packet_transmit_release`** service to release the packet associated with the transmit complete interrupt back to the available packet pool. Next, the driver examines the transmit queue for additional packets waiting to be sent. As many of the queued transmit packets that fit into the hardware transmit buffer(s) are de-queued and loaded into the buffers. This is followed by initiation of another send operation.

As soon as the data in the `NX_PACKET` has been moved into the transmitter FIFO (or in case a driver supports zero-copy operation, the data in `NX_PACKET` has been transmitted), the driver must move the `nx_packet_prepend_ptr` to the beginning of the IP header before calling **`nx_packet_transmit_release`**. Remember to adjust `nx_packet_length` field accordingly. If an IP frame is made up of multiple packets, only the head of the packet chain needs to be released.

## Driver Input

Upon reception of a received packet interrupt, the network driver retrieves the packet from the physical hardware receive buffers and builds a valid NetX packet. Building a

valid NetX packet involves setting up the appropriate length field and chaining together multiple packets if the incoming packet's size is greater than a single packet payload. Once properly built, the `prepend_ptr` is moved after the physical layer header and the receive packet is dispatched to NetX.

NetX assumes that the IP and ARP headers are aligned on a ULONG boundary. The NetX driver must, therefore, ensure this alignment. In Ethernet environments this is done by starting the Ethernet header two bytes from the beginning of the packet. When the `nx_packet_prepend_ptr` is moved beyond the Ethernet header, the underlying IP or ARP header is 4-byte aligned.

There are several receive packet functions available in NetX. If the received packet is an ARP packet, `_nx_arp_packet_deferred_receive` is called. If the received packet is an RARP packet, `_nx_rarp_packet_deferred_receive` is called. There are several options for handling incoming IP packets. For the fastest handling of IP packets, `_nx_ip_packet_receive` is called. This approach has the least overhead, but requires more processing in the driver's receive interrupt service handler (ISR). For minimal ISR processing `_nx_ip_packet_deferred_receive` is called.

After the new receive packet is properly built, the physical hardware's receive buffers are setup to receive more data. This might require allocating NetX packets and placing the payload address in the hardware receive buffer or it may simply amount to changing a setting in the hardware receive buffer. To minimize overrun possibilities, it is important that the hardware's receive buffers have available buffers as soon as possible after a packet is received.

*The initial receive buffers are setup during driver initialization.*

**i**

## Deferred Receive Packet Handling

The driver may defer receive packet processing to the NetX IP helper thread. For some applications this may be necessary to minimize ISR processing as well as dropped packets.

To use deferred packet handling, the NetX library must first be compiled with ***NX\_DRIVER\_DEFERRED\_PROCESSING*** defined. This adds the deferred packet logic to the NetX IP helper thread. Next, on receiving a data packet, the driver must call `_nx_ip_packet_deferred_receive()`:

```
_nx_ip_packet_deferred_receive(ip_ptr, packet_ptr);
```

The deferred receive function places the receive packet represented by *packet\_ptr* on a FIFO (linked list) and notifies the IP helper thread. After executing, the IP helper repetitively calls the deferred handling function to process each deferred packet. The deferred handler processing typically includes removing the packet's physical layer header (usually Ethernet) and dispatching it to one of these NetX receive functions:

```
_nx_ip_packet_deferred_receive
_nx_arp_packet_deferred_receive
_nx_rarp_packet_deferred_receive
```

## Example RAM Ethernet Network Driver

The NetX demonstration system is delivered with a small RAM-based network driver, defined in the file ***nx\_ram\_network\_driver.c***. This driver assumes the IP instances are all on the same network and simply assigns virtual hardware addresses (MAC addresses) to each device instance as they are created. This file provides a good example of the basic structure of NetX physical network drivers. Users may develop their own network drivers using the driver framework presented in this example.

The entry function of the network driver is ***\_nx\_ram\_network\_driver()***, which is passed to the IP instance create call. Entry functions for additional network interfaces can be passed into the ***nx\_ip\_interface\_attach()*** service. After the IP instance starts to run, the driver entry function is invoked to initialize and enable the device (refer to the case **NX\_LINK\_INITIALIZE** and **NX\_LINK\_ENABLE**). After the **NX\_LINK\_ENABLE** command is issued, the device should be ready to transmit and receive packets.

The IP instance transmits network packets via one of these commands:

---

<b><i>NX_LINK_PACKET_SEND</i></b>	An IP packet is being transmitted,
<b><i>NX_LINK_ARP_SEND</i></b>	An ARP request or ARP response packet is being transmitted,
<b><i>NX_LINK_ARP_RARP_SEND</i></b>	A Reverse ARP request or response packet is being transmitted,

On processing these commands, the network driver needs to prepend the appropriate Ethernet frame header, and then send it to the underlying hardware for transmission. During the transmission process, the network driver has the exclusive ownership of the packet buffer area. Therefore once the data are being transmitted (or once the data has been copied into the driver internal transfer buffer), the network driver is responsible for releasing the packet buffer by first moving the prepend pointer past the Ethernet header to the IP header (and adjust packet length accordingly), and then by calling the ***nx\_packet\_transmit\_release()*** service to release the packet. Not releasing the packet after data transmission will cause packets to leak.

The network device driver is also responsible for handling incoming data packets. In the RAM driver example, the received packet is processed by the

function **`_nx_ram_network_driver_receive()`**. Once the device receives an Ethernet frame, the driver is responsible for storing the data in `NX_PACKET` structure. Note that NetX assumes the IP header starts from 4-byte aligned address. Since the length of Ethernet header is 14-byte, the driver needs to store the starting of the Ethernet header at 2-byte aligned address to guarantee that the IP header starts at 4-byte aligned address.



## ***NetX Services***

---

- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) 378
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) 378
- Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) 379
- Internet Protocol (IP) 379
- Packet Management 381
- Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) 381
- System Management 382
- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) 382
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) 384

## Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)

```

UINT    nx_arp_dynamic_entries_invalidate(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_arp_dynamic_entry_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG
        ip_address, ULONG physical_msw, ULONG physical_lsw);

UINT    nx_arp_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr, VOID *arp_cache_memory,
        ULONG arp_cache_size);

UINT    nx_arp_gratuitous_send(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        VOID (*response_handler)(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        NX_PACKET *packet_ptr));

UINT    nx_arp_hardware_address_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG ip_address, ULONG*physical_msw,
        ULONG *physical_lsw);

UINT    nx_arp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG
        *arp_requests_sent, ULONG*arp_requests_received,
        ULONG *arp_responses_sent,
        ULONG*arp_responses_received,
        ULONG *arp_dynamic_entries,
        ULONG *arp_static_entries,
        ULONG *arp_aged_entries,
        ULONG *arp_invalid_messages);

UINT    nx_arp_ip_address_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG *ip_address, ULONG physical_msw,
        ULONG physical_lsw);

UINT    nx_arp_static_entries_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_arp_static_entry_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG ip_address,
        ULONG physical_msw, ULONG physical_lsw);

UINT    nx_arp_static_entry_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG ip_address, ULONG physical_msw,
        ULONG physical_lsw);

```

## Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)

```

UINT    nx_icmp_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_icmp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG *pings_sent,
        ULONG *ping_timeouts, ULONG *ping_threads_suspended,
        ULONG *ping_responses_received,
        ULONG *icmp_checksum_errors,
        ULONG *icmp_unhandled_messages);

UINT    nx_icmp_ping(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG ip_address, CHAR *data,
        ULONG data_size, NX_PACKET **response_ptr,
        ULONG wait_option);

```

## Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)

```

UINT    nx_igmp_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_igmp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG
                        *igmp_reports_sent, ULONG *igmp_queries_received,
                        ULONG *igmp_checksum_errors,
                        ULONG *current_groups_joined);

UINT    nx_igmp_loopback_disable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_igmp_loopback_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        ULONG group_address, UINT interface_index);

UINT    nx_igmp_multicast_join(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        ULONG group_address);

UINT    nx_igmp_multicast_leave(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        ULONG group_address);

```

## Internet Protocol (IP)

```

UINT    nx_ip_address_change_notify(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        VOID (*change_notify)(NX_IP *, VOID *),
                        VOID *additional_info);

UINT    nx_ip_address_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG *ip_address,
                        ULONG *network_mask);

UINT    nx_ip_address_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG ip_address,
                        ULONG network_mask);

UINT    nx_ip_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr, CHAR *name,
                        ULONG ip_address,
                        ULONG network_mask, NX_PACKET_POOL *default_pool,
                        VOID (*ip_network_driver)(NX_IP_DRIVER *),
                        VOID *memory_ptr, ULONG memory_size, UINT priority);

UINT    nx_ip_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_driver_direct_command(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT
                        command, ULONG *return_value_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_driver_interface_direct_command(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        UINT command, UINT interface_index, ULONG
                        *return_value_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_forwarding_disable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_forwarding_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_fragment_disable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_fragment_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT    nx_ip_gateway_address_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        ULONG ip_address);

UINT    nx_ip_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
                        ULONG *ip_total_packets_sent,

```

```

        ULONG *ip_total_bytes_sent,
        ULONG *ip_total_packets_received,
        ULONG *ip_total_bytes_received,
        ULONG *ip_invalid_packets,
        ULONG *ip_receive_packets_dropped,
        ULONG *ip_receive_checksum_errors,
        ULONG *ip_send_packets_dropped,
        ULONG *ip_total_fragments_sent,
        ULONG *ip_total_fragments_received);

UINT  nx_ip_interface_address_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG interface_index,
        ULONG *ip_address,
        ULONG *network_mask);

UINT  nx_ip_interface_address_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        ULONG interface_index, ULONG ip_address, ULONG
        network_mask);

UINT  nx_ip_interface_attach(NX_IP *ip_ptr, CHAR*
        interface_name, ULONG ip_address, ULONG
        network_mask,
        VOID (*ip_link_driver)(struct NX_IP_DRIVER_STRUCT
        *));

UINT  nx_ip_interface_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT
        interface_index, CHAR **interface_name, ULONG
        *ip_address,
        ULONG *network_mask, ULONG *mtu_size,
        ULONG *physical_address_msw, ULONG
        *physical_address_lsw);

UINT  nx_ip_interface_status_check(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        UINT interface_index, ULONG needed_status,
        ULONG *actual_status, ULONG wait_option);

UINT  nx_ip_link_status_change_notify_set(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        VOID (*link_status_change_notify)(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        UINT interface_index, UINT link_up));

UINT  nx_ip_raw_packet_disable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT  nx_ip_raw_packet_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT  nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        NX_PACKET *packet_ptr, ULONG destination_ip,
        UINT interface_index, ULONG type_of_service);

UINT  nx_ip_raw_packet_receive(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        NX_PACKET **packet_ptr,
        ULONG wait_option);

UINT  nx_ip_raw_packet_send(NX_IP *ip_ptr,
        NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
        ULONG destination_ip, ULONG type_of_service);

UINT  nx_ip_static_route_add(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG
        network_address, ULONG net_mask, ULONG next_hop);

UINT  nx_ip_static_route_delete(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG
        network_address, ULONG net_mask);

```

## Packet Management

UINT **nx\_ip\_status\_check**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, ULONG needed\_status, ULONG \*actual\_status, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_packet\_allocate**(NX\_PACKET\_POOL \*pool\_ptr, NX\_PACKET \*\*packet\_ptr, ULONG packet\_type, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_packet\_copy**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr, NX\_PACKET \*\*new\_packet\_ptr, NX\_PACKET\_POOL \*pool\_ptr, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_packet\_data\_append**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr, VOID \*data\_start, ULONG data\_size, NX\_PACKET\_POOL \*pool\_ptr, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_packet\_data\_extract\_offset**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr, ULONG offset, VOID \*buffer\_start, ULONG buffer\_length, ULONG \*bytes\_copied);

UINT **nx\_packet\_data\_retrieve**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr, VOID \*buffer\_start, ULONG \*bytes\_copied);

UINT **nx\_packet\_length\_get**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr, ULONG \*length);

UINT **nx\_packet\_pool\_create**(NX\_PACKET\_POOL \*pool\_ptr, CHAR \*name, ULONG block\_size, VOID \*memory\_ptr, ULONG memory\_size);

UINT **nx\_packet\_pool\_delete**(NX\_PACKET\_POOL \*pool\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_packet\_pool\_info\_get**(NX\_PACKET\_POOL \*pool\_ptr, ULONG \*total\_packets, ULONG \*free\_packets, ULONG \*empty\_pool\_requests, ULONG \*empty\_pool\_suspensions, ULONG \*invalid\_packet\_releases);

UINT **nx\_packet\_release**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_packet\_transmit\_release**(NX\_PACKET \*packet\_ptr);

## Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)

UINT **nx\_rarp\_disable**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_rarp\_enable**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_rarp\_info\_get**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, ULONG \*rarp\_requests\_sent, ULONG \*rarp\_responses\_received, ULONG \*rarp\_invalid\_messages);

## System Management

VOID **nx\_system\_initialize**(VOID);

## Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)

UINT **nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_bind**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, UINT port, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, ULONG server\_ip, UINT server\_port, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, UINT \*port\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_enable**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, UINT port, UINT \*free\_port\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_info\_get**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, ULONG \*tcp\_packets\_sent, ULONG \*tcp\_bytes\_sent, ULONG \*tcp\_packets\_received, ULONG \*tcp\_bytes\_received, ULONG \*tcp\_invalid\_packets, ULONG \*tcp\_receive\_packets\_dropped, ULONG \*tcp\_checksum\_errors, ULONG \*tcp\_connections, ULONG \*tcp\_disconnections, ULONG \*tcp\_connections\_dropped, ULONG \*tcp\_retransmit\_packets);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, ULONG wait\_option);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, UINT port, NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, UINT listen\_queue\_size, VOID (\*tcp\_listen\_callback)(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, UINT port));

UINT **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, UINT port, NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, UINT port);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available**(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, ULONG \*bytes\_available);

UINT **nx\_tcp\_socket\_create**(NX\_IP \*ip\_ptr, NX\_TCP\_SOCKET \*socket\_ptr, CHAR \*name, ULONG type\_of\_service, ULONG fragment, UINT time\_to\_live, ULONG window\_size, VOID (\*tcp\_urgent\_data\_callback)(NX\_TCP\_SOCKET

---

```

        *socket_ptr),
        VOID (*tcp_disconnect_callback) (NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr));

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_delete(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_disconnect(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        ULONG wait_option);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_establish_notify(NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr, VOID
        (*tcp_establish_notify) (NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr));

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_complete_notify(NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr, VOID
        (*tcp_disconnect_complete_notify) (NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr));

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_timed_wait_callback(NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr, VOID
        (*tcp_timed_wait_callback) (NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr));

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_info_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        ULONG *tcp_packets_sent, ULONG *tcp_bytes_sent,
        ULONG *tcp_packets_received, ULONG
        *tcp_bytes_received,
        ULONG *tcp_retransmit_packets, ULONG
        *tcp_packets_queued,
        ULONG *tcp_checksum_errors, ULONG *tcp_socket_state,
        ULONG *tcp_transmit_queue_depth, ULONG
        *tcp_transmit_window,
        ULONG *tcp_receive_window);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_mss_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        ULONG *mss);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_mss_peer_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        ULONG *peer_mss);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_mss_set(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        ULONG mss);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_peer_info_get(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        ULONG *peer_ip_address, ULONG *peer_port);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_receive(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        NX_PACKET **packet_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_receive_notify(NX_TCP_SOCKET
        *socket_ptr, VOID
        (*tcp_receive_notify) (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr));

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_send(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        NX_PACKET *packet_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    nx_tcp_socket_state_wait(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
        UINT desired_state, ULONG wait_option);

```

---

## User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

```

UINT      nx_tcp_socket_transmit_configure(NX_TCP_SOCKET
      *socket_ptr, ULONG max_queue_depth, ULONG timeout,
      ULONG max_retries, ULONG timeout_shift);

UINT      nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify_set
      (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
      VOID (*tcp_window_update_notify)
      (NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr));

UINT      nx_udp_enable(NX_IP *ip_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_free_port_find(NX_IP *ip_ptr, UINT port,
      UINT *free_port_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_info_get(NX_IP *ip_ptr, ULONG *udp_packets_sent,
      ULONG *udp_bytes_sent, ULONG *udp_packets_received,
      ULONG *udp_bytes_received,
      ULONG *udp_invalid_packets,
      ULONG *udp_receive_packets_dropped,
      ULONG *udp_checksum_errors);

UINT      nx_udp_packet_info_extract(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
      ULONG *ip_address, UINT *protocol, UINT *port,
      UINT *interface_index);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_bind(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
      UINT port, ULONG wait_option);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_bytes_available(NX_UDP_SOCKET
      *socket_ptr, ULONG *bytes_available);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_checksum_disable(NX_UDP_SOCKET
      *socket_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_checksum_enable(NX_UDP_SOCKET
      *socket_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_create(NX_IP *ip_ptr, NX_UDP_SOCKET
      *socket_ptr, CHAR *name, ULONG type_of_service,
      ULONG fragment,
      UINT time_to_live, ULONG queue_maximum);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_delete(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_info_get(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
      ULONG *udp_packets_sent, ULONG *udp_bytes_sent,
      ULONG *udp_packets_received, ULONG
      *udp_bytes_received,
      ULONG *udp_packets_queued,
      ULONG *udp_receive_packets_dropped,
      ULONG *udp_checksum_errors);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_interface_send(NX_UDP_SOCKET
      *socket_ptr, NX_PACKET *packet_ptr, ULONG
      ip_address, UINT port, UINT address_index);

```



---

```
UINT      nx_udp_socket_port_get(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                UINT *port_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_receive(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                                NX_PACKET **packet_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_receive_notify(NX_UDP_SOCKET
                                *socket_ptr, VOID
                                (*udp_receive_notify)(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr));

UINT      nx_udp_socket_send(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                              NX_PACKET *packet_ptr, ULONG ip_address, UINT port);

UINT      nx_udp_socket_unbind(NX_UDP_SOCKET *socket_ptr);

UINT      nx_udp_source_extract(NX_PACKET *packet_ptr,
                              ULONG *ip_address, UINT *port);
```



## ***NetX Constants***

---

- Alphabetic Listing 388
- Listings by Value 397

## Alphabetic Listing

NX_ALL_HOSTS_ADDRESS	0xFE000001
NX_ALL_ROUTERS_ADDRESS	0xFE000002
NX_ALREADY_BOUND	0x22
NX_ALREADY_ENABLED	0x15
NX_ALREADY_RELEASED	0x31
NX_ALREADY_SUSPENDED	0x40
NX_ANY_PORT	0
NX_ARP_EXPIRATION_RATE	0
NX_ARP_HARDWARE_SIZE	0x06
NX_ARP_HARDWARE_TYPE	0x0001
NX_ARP_MAX_QUEUE_DEPTH	4
NX_ARP_MAXIMUM_RETRIES	18
NX_ARP_MESSAGE_SIZE	28
NX_ARP_OPTION_REQUEST	0x0001
NX_ARP_OPTION_RESPONSE	0x0002
NX_ARP_PROTOCOL_SIZE	0x04
NX_ARP_PROTOCOL_TYPE	0x0800
NX_ARP_TIMER_ERROR	0x18
NX_ARP_UPDATE_RATE	10
NX_ARP_TABLE_SIZE	0x2F
NX_ARP_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_CALLER_ERROR	0x11
NX_CARRY_BIT	0x10000
NX_CONNECTION_PENDING	0x48
NX_DELETE_ERROR	0x10
NX_DELETED	0x05
NX_DISCONNECT_FAILED	0x41
NX_DONT_FRAGMENT	0x00004000
NX_DRIVER_TX_DONE	0xDDDDDDDD
NX_DUPLICATE_LISTEN	0x34
NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND	0x16
NX_FALSE	0
NX_FOREVER	1

---

NX_FRAG_OFFSET_MASK	0x00001FFF
NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY	0x00000000
NX_ICMP_ADDRESS_MASK_REP_TYPE	18
NX_ICMP_ADDRESS_MASK_REQ_TYPE	17
NX_ICMP_DEST_UNREACHABLE_TYPE	3
NX_ICMP_ECHO_REPLY_TYPE	0
NX_ICMP_ECHO_REQUEST_TYPE	8
NX_ICMP_FRAGMENT_NEEDED_CODE	4
NX_ICMP_HOST_PROHIBIT_CODE	10
NX_ICMP_HOST_SERVICE_CODE	12
NX_ICMP_HOST_UNKNOWN_CODE	7
NX_ICMP_HOST_UNREACH_CODE	1
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_PROHIBIT_CODE	9
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_SERVICE_CODE	11
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_UNKNOWN_CODE	6
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_UNREACH_CODE	0
NX_ICMP_PACKET	36
NX_ICMP_PARAMETER_PROB_TYPE	12
NX_ICMP_PORT_UNREACH_CODE	3
NX_ICMP_PROTOCOL_UNREACH_CODE	2
NX_ICMP_REDIRECT_TYPE	5
NX_ICMP_SOURCE_ISOLATED_CODE	8
NX_ICMP_SOURCE_QUENCH_TYPE	4
NX_ICMP_SOURCE_ROUTE_CODE	5
NX_ICMP_TIME_EXCEEDED_TYPE	11
NX_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_REP_TYPE	14
NX_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_REQ_TYPE	13
NX_IGMP_HEADER_SIZE	8
NX_IGMP_HOST_RESPONSE_TYPE	0x02000000
NX_IGMP_HOST_V2_JOIN_TYPE	0x16000000
NX_IGMP_HOST_V2_LEAVE_TYPE	0x17000000
NX_IGMP_HOST_VERSION_1	1
NX_IGMP_HOST_VERSION_2	2
NX_IGMP_MAX_RESP_TIME_MASK	0x00FF0000
NX_IGMP_MAX_UPDATE_TIME	10

---

---

NX_IGMP_PACKET	36
NX_IGMP_ROUTER_QUERY_TYPE	0x01000000
NX_IGMP_TTL	1
NX_IGMP_TYPE_MASK	0x0F000000
NX_IGMP_VERSION	0x10000000
NX_IGMPV2_TYPE_MASK	0xFF000000
NX_IN_PROGRESS	0x37
NX_INIT_PACKET_ID	1
NX_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	0x4A
NX_NOT_SUPPORTED	0x4B
NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	0x4C
NX_INVALID_PACKET	0x12
NX_INVALID_PORT	0x46
NX_INVALID_RELISTEN	0x47
NX_INVALID_SOCKET	0x13
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	0x21
NX_IP_ADDRESS_RESOLVED	0x0002
NX_IP_ALIGN_FRAGS	8
NX_IP_ALL_EVENTS	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_IP_ARP_ENABLED	0x0008
NX_IP_ARP_REC_EVENT	0x00000010
NX_IP_CLASS_A_HOSTID	0x00FFFFFF
NX_IP_CLASS_A_MASK	0x80000000
NX_IP_CLASS_A_NETID	0x7F000000
NX_IP_CLASS_A_TYPE	0x00000000
NX_IP_CLASS_B_HOSTID	0x0000FFFF
NX_IP_CLASS_B_MASK	0xC0000000
NX_IP_CLASS_B_NETID	0x3FFF0000
NX_IP_CLASS_B_TYPE	0x80000000
NX_IP_CLASS_C_HOSTID	0x000000FF
NX_IP_CLASS_C_MASK	0xE0000000
NX_IP_CLASS_C_NETID	0x1FFFFF00
NX_IP_CLASS_C_TYPE	0xC0000000
NX_IP_CLASS_D_GROUP	0x0FFFFFFF
NX_IP_CLASS_D_HOSTID	0x00000000
NX_IP_CLASS_D_MASK	0xF0000000

---

---

NX_IP_CLASS_D_TYPE	0xE0000000
NX_IP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_IP_DONT_FRAGMENT	0x00004000
NX_IP_DRIVER_DEFERRED_EVENT	0x00000800
NX_IP_DRIVER_PACKET_EVENT	0x00000200
NX_IP_FRAGMENT_MASK	0x00003FFF
NX_IP_ICMP	0x00010000
NX_IP_ICMP_EVENT	0x00000004
NX_IP_ID	0x49502020
NX_IP_IGMP	0x00020000
NX_IP_IGMP_ENABLE_EVENT	0x00000400
NX_IP_IGMP_ENABLED	0x0040
NX_IP_IGMP_EVENT	0x00000040
NX_IP_INITIALIZE_DONE	0x0001
NX_IP_INTERNAL_ERROR	0x20
NX_IP_LENGTH_MASK	0x0F000000
NX_IP_LIMITIED_BROADCAST	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_IP_LINK_ENABLED	0x0004
NX_IP_LOOPBACK_FIRST	0x7F000000
NX_IP_LOOPBACK_LAST	0x7FFFFFFF
NX_IP_MAX_DATA	0x00080000
NX_IP_MAX_RELIABLE	0x00040000
NX_IP_MIN_COST	0x00020000
NX_IP_MIN_DELAY	0x00100000
NX_IP_MORE_FRAGMENT	0x00002000
NX_IP_MULTICAST_LOWER	0x5E000000
NX_IP_MULTICAST_MASK	0x007FFFFFFF
NX_IP_MULTICAST_UPPER	0x00000100
NX_IP_NORMAL	0x00000000
NX_IP_NORMAL_LENGTH	5
NX_IP_OFFSET_MASK	0x00001FFF
NX_IP_PACKET	36
NX_IP_PACKET_SIZE_MASK	0x0000FFFF
NX_IP_PERIODIC_EVENT	0x00000001
NX_IP_PERIODIC_RATE	100

---

---

NX_IP_PROTOCOL_MASK	0x00FF0000
NX_IP_RARP_COMPLETE	0x0080
NX_IP_RARP_REC_EVENT	0x00000020
NX_IP_RECEIVE_EVENT	0x00000008
NX_IP_TCP	0x00060000
NX_IP_TCP_CLEANUP_DEFERRED	0x00001000
NX_IP_TCP_ENABLED	0x0020
NX_IP_TCP_EVENT	0x00000080
NX_IP_TCP_FAST_EVENT	0x00000100
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE	0x00000080
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE_MASK	0xFF000000
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE_SHIFT	24
NX_IP_TOS_MASK	0x00FF0000
NX_IP_UDP	0x00110000
NX_IP_UDP_ENABLED	0x0010
NX_IP_UNFRAG_EVENT	0x00000002
NX_IP_VERSION	0x45000000x80
NX_LINK_ARP_RESPONSE_SEND	6
NX_LINK_ARP_SEND	5
NX_LINK_DEFERRED_PROCESSING	18
NX_LINK_DISABLE	3
NX_LINK_ENABLE	2
NX_LINK_GET_ALLOC_ERRORS	16
NX_LINK_GET_DUPLEX_TYPE	12
NX_LINK_GET_ERROR_COUNT	13
NX_LINK_GET_RX_COUNT	14
NX_LINK_GET_SPEED	11
NX_LINK_GET_STATUS	10
NX_LINK_GET_TX_COUNT	15
NX_LINK_INITIALIZE	1
NX_LINK_INTERFACE_ATTACH	19
NX_LINK_MULTICAST_JOIN	8
NX_LINK_MULTICAST_LEAVE	9
NX_LINK_PACKET_BROADCAST	4
NX_LINK_PACKET_SEND	0

---



---

NX_LINK_RARP_SEND	7
NX_LINK_UNINITIALIZE	17
NX_LINK_USER_COMMAND	50
NX_LOWER_16_MASK	0x0000FFFF
NX_MAX_LISTEN	0x33
NX_MAX_LISTEN_REQUESTS	10
NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS	7
NX_MAX_PORT	0xFFFF
NX_MORE_FRAGMENTS	0x00002000
NX_NO_FREE_PORTS	0x45
NX_NO_MAPPING	0x04
NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES	0x17
NX_NO_PACKET	0x01
NX_NO_RESPONSE	0x29
NX_NO_WAIT	0
NX_NOT_BOUND	0x24
NX_NOT_CLOSED	0x35
NX_NOT_CONNECTED	0x38
NX_NOT_CREATED	0x27
NX_NOT_ENABLED	0x14
NX_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	0x4A
NX_NOT_LISTEN_STATE	0x36
NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL	0x43
NX_NULL	0
NX_OPTION_ERROR	0x0a
NX_OVERFLOW	0x03
NX_PACKET_ALLOCATED	0xAAAAAAAA
NX_PACKET_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_PACKET_ENQUEUED	0xEEEEEEEE
NX_PACKET_FREE	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_PACKET_POOL_ID	0x5041434B
NX_PACKET_READY	0BBBBBBBB
NX_PHYSICAL_HEADER	16
NX_PHYSICAL_TRAILER	4
NX_POOL_DELETED	0x30

---

---

NX_POOL_ERROR	0x06
NX_PORT_UNAVAILABLE	0x23
NX_PTR_ERROR	0x07
NX_RARP_HARDWARE_SIZE	0x06
NX_RARP_HARDWARE_TYPE	0x0001
NX_RARP_MESSAGE_SIZE	28
NX_RARP_OPTION_REQUEST	0x0003
NX_RARP_OPTION_RESPONSE	0x0004
NX_RARP_PROTOCOL_SIZE	0x04
NX_RARP_PROTOCOL_TYPE	0x0800
NX_RECEIVE_PACKET	0
NX_RESERVED_CODE0	0x19
NX_RESERVED_CODE1	0x25
NX_RESERVED_CODE2	0x32
NX_ROUTE_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_ROUTE_TABLE_SIZE	32
NX_SEARCH_PORT_START	30000
NX_SHIFT_BY_16	16
NX_SIZE_ERROR	0x09
NX_SOCKET_UNBOUND	0x26
NX_SOCKETS_BOUND	0x28
NX_STILL_BOUND	0x42
NX_SUCCESS	0x00
NX_TCP_ACK_BIT	0x00100000
NX_TCP_ACK_TIMER_RATE	5
NX_TCP_CLIENT	1
NX_TCP_CLOSE_WAIT	6
NX_TCP_CLOSED	1
NX_TCP_CLOSING	9
NX_TCP_CONTROL_MASK	0x00170000
NX_TCP_EOL_KIND	0x00
NX_TCP_ESTABLISHED	5
NX_TCP_FAST_TIMER_RATE	10
NX_TCP_FIN_BIT	0x00010000
NX_TCP_FIN_WAIT_1	7

---

---

NX_TCP_FIN_WAIT_2	8
NX_TCP_HEADER_MASK	0xF0000000
NX_TCP_HEADER_SHIFT	28
NX_TCP_HEADER_SIZE	0x50000000
NX_TCP_ID	0x54435020
NX_TCP_KEEPALIVE_INITIAL	7200
NX_TCP_KEEPALIVE_RETRIES	10
NX_TCP_KEEPALIVE_RETRY	75
NX_TCP_LAST_ACK	11
NX_TCP_LISTEN_STATE	2
NX_TCP_MAXIMUM_RETRIES	10
NX_TCP_MAXIMUM_TX_QUEUE	20
NX_TCP_MSS_KIND	0x02
NX_TCP_MSS_OPTION	0x02040000
NX_TCP_MSS_SIZE	1460
NX_TCP_NOP_KIND	0x01
NX_TCP_OPTION_END	0x01010100
NX_TCP_PACKET	56
NX_TCP_PORT_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_TCP_PORT_TABLE_SIZE	32
NX_TCP_PSH_BIT	0x00080000
NX_TCP_RETRY_SHIFT	0
NX_TCP_RST_BIT	0x00040000
NX_TCP_SERVER	2
NX_TCP_SYN_BIT	0x00020000
NX_TCP_SYN_HEADER	0x70000000
NX_TCP_SYN_RECEIVED	4
NX_TCP_SYN_SENT	3
NX_TCP_TIMED_WAIT	10
NX_TCP_TRANSMIT_TIMER_RATE	1
NX_TCP_URG_BIT	0x00200000
NX_TRUE	1
NX_TX_QUEUE_DEPTH	0x49
NX_UDP_ID	0x55445020
NX_UDP_PACKET	44

---

---

NX_UDP_PORT_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_UDP_PORT_TABLE_SIZE	32
NX_UNDERFLOW	0x02
NX_UNHANDLED_COMMAND	0x44
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x1A
NX_WAIT_ERROR	0x08
NX_WAIT_FOREVER	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_WINDOW_OVERFLOW	0x39

## Listings by Value

NX_ANY_PORT	0
NX_ARP_EXPIRATION_RATE	0
NX_FALSE	0
NX_ICMP_ECHO_REPLY_TYPE	0
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_UNREACH_CODE	0
NX_LINK_PACKET_SEND	0
NX_NO_WAIT	0
NX_NULL	0
NX_RECEIVE_PACKET	0
NX_TCP_RETRY_SHIFT	0
NX_SUCCESS	0x00
NX_TCP_EOL_KIND	0x00
NX_FRAGMENT_OKAY	0x00000000
NX_IP_CLASS_A_TYPE	0x00000000
NX_IP_CLASS_D_HOSTID	0x00000000
NX_IP_NORMAL	0x00000000
NX_FOREVER	1
NX_ICMP_HOST_UNREACH_CODE	1
NX_IGMP_HOST_VERSION_1	1
NX_IGMP_TTL	1
NX_INIT_PACKET_ID	1
NX_LINK_INITIALIZE	1
NX_TCP_CLIENT	1
NX_TCP_CLOSED	1
NX_TCP_TRANSMIT_TIMER_RATE	1
NX_TRUE	1
NX_IP_PERIODIC_EVENT	0x00000001
NX_ARP_HARDWARE_TYPE	0x0001
NX_ARP_OPTION_REQUEST	0x0001
NX_IP_INITIALIZE_DONE	0x0001
NX_RARP_HARDWARE_TYPE	0x0001
NX_NO_PACKET	0x01
NX_TCP_NOP_KIND	0x01

---

NX_ICMP_PROTOCOL_UNREACH_CODE	2
NX_IGMP_HOST_VERSION_2	2
NX_LINK_ENABLE	2
NX_TCP_LISTEN_STATE	2
NX_TCP_SERVER	2
NX_IP_UNFRAG_EVENT	0x00000002
NX_ARP_OPTION_RESPONSE	0x0002
NX_IP_ADDRESS_RESOLVED	0x0002
NX_TCP_MSS_KIND	0x02
NX_UNDERFLOW	0x02
NX_ICMP_DEST_UNREACHABLE_TYPE	3
NX_ICMP_PORT_UNREACH_CODE	3
NX_LINK_DISABLE	3
NX_TCP_SYN_SENT	3
NX_RARP_OPTION_REQUEST	0x0003
NX_OVERFLOW	0x03
NX_ARP_MAX_QUEUE_DEPTH	4
NX_ICMP_FRAGMENT_NEEDED_CODE	4
NX_ICMP_SOURCE_QUENCH_TYPE	4
NX_LINK_PACKET_BROADCAST	4
NX_PHYSICAL_TRAILER	4
NX_TCP_SYN_RECEIVED	4
NX_IP_ICMP_EVENT	0x00000004
NX_IP_LINK_ENABLED	0x0004
NX_RARP_OPTION_RESPONSE	0x0004
NX_ARP_PROTOCOL_SIZE	0x04
NX_NO_MAPPING	0x04
NX_RARP_PROTOCOL_SIZE	0x04
NX_ICMP_REDIRECT_TYPE	5
NX_ICMP_SOURCE_ROUTE_CODE	5
NX_IP_NORMAL_LENGTH	5
NX_LINK_ARP_SEND	5
NX_TCP_ACK_TIMER_RATE	5
NX_TCP_ESTABLISHED	5
NX_DELETED	0x05

---

---

NX_ICMP_NETWORK_UNKNOWN_CODE	6
NX_LINK_ARP_RESPONSE_SEND	6
NX_TCP_CLOSE_WAIT	6
NX_ARP_HARDWARE_SIZE	0x06
NX_POOL_ERROR	0x06
NX_RARP_HARDWARE_SIZE	0x06
NX_ICMP_HOST_UNKNOWN_CODE	7
NX_LINK_RARP_SEND	7
NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS	7
NX_TCP_FIN_WAIT_1	7
NX_PTR_ERROR	0x07
NX_ICMP_ECHO_REQUEST_TYPE	8
NX_ICMP_SOURCE_ISOLATED_CODE	8
NX_IP_ALIGN_FRAGS	8
NX_LINK_MULTICAST_JOIN	8
NX_TCP_FIN_WAIT_2	8
NX_IGMP_HEADER_SIZE	8
NX_IP_RECEIVE_EVENT	0x00000008
NX_IP_ARP_ENABLED	0x0008
NX_WAIT_ERROR	0x08
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_PROHIBIT_CODE	9
NX_LINK_MULTICAST_LEAVE	9
NX_TCP_CLOSING	9
NX_SIZE_ERROR	0x09
NX_ARP_UPDATE_RATE	10
NX_ICMP_HOST_PROHIBIT_CODE	10
NX_IGMP_MAX_UPDATE_TIME	10
NX_LINK_GET_STATUS	10
NX_MAX_LISTEN_REQUESTS	10
NX_TCP_FAST_TIMER_RATE	10
NX_TCP_KEEPALIVE_RETRIES	10
NX_TCP_MAXIMUM_RETRIES	10
NX_TCP_TIMED_WAIT	10
NX_OPTION_ERROR	0x0A
NX_ICMP_NETWORK_SERVICE_CODE	11

---

---

NX_ICMP_TIME_EXCEEDED_TYPE	11
NX_LINK_GET_SPEED	11
NX_TCP_LAST_ACK	11
NX_ICMP_HOST_SERVICE_CODE	12
NX_ICMP_PARAMETER_PROB_TYPE	12
NX_LINK_GET_DUPLEX_TYPE	12
NX_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_REQ_TYPE	13
NX_LINK_GET_ERROR_COUNT	13
NX_ICMP_TIMESTAMP_REP_TYPE	14
NX_LINK_GET_RX_COUNT	14
NX_LINK_GET_TX_COUNT	15
NX_LINK_GET_ALLOC_ERRORS	16
NX_PHYSICAL_HEADER	16
NX_SHIFT_BY_16	16
NX_IP_ARP_REC_EVENT	0x00000010
NX_IP_UDP_ENABLED	0x0010
NX_DELETE_ERROR	0x10
NX_ICMP_ADDRESS_MASK_REQ_TYPE	17
NX_LINK_UNINITIALIZE	17
NX_CALLER_ERROR	0x11
NX_ARP_MAXIMUM_RETRIES	18
NX_ICMP_ADDRESS_MASK_REP_TYPE	18
NX_LINK_DEFERRED_PROCESSING	18
NX_INVALID_PACKET	0x12
NX_INVALID_SOCKET	0x13
NX_LINK_INTERFACE_ATTACH	19
NX_TCP_MAXIMUM_TX_QUEUE	20
NX_NOT_ENABLED	0x14
NX_ALREADY_ENABLED	0x15
NX_ENTRY_NOT_FOUND	0x16
NX_NO_MORE_ENTRIES	0x17
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE_SHIFT	24
NX_ARP_TIMER_ERROR	0x18
NX_RESERVED_CODE0	0x19
NX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x1A

---



---

NX_ARP_MESSAGE_SIZE	28
NX_RARP_MESSAGE_SIZE	28
NX_TCP_HEADER_SHIFT	28
NX_ROUTE_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_TCP_PORT_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_UDP_PORT_TABLE_MASK	0x1F
NX_ROUTE_TABLE_SIZE	32
NX_TCP_PORT_TABLE_SIZE	32
NX_UDP_PORT_TABLE_SIZE	32
NX_IP_RARP_REC_EVENT	0x00000020
NX_IP_TCP_ENABLED	0x0020
NX_IP_INTERNAL_ERROR	0x20
NX_IP_ADDRESS_ERROR	0x21
NX_ALREADY_BOUND	0x22
NX_PORT_UNAVAILABLE	0x23
NX_ICMP_PACKET	36
NX_IGMP_PACKET	36
NX_IP_PACKET	36
NX_IPV4_ICMP_PACKET	36
NX_IPV4_IGMP_PACKET	36
NX_NOT_BOUND	0x24
NX_RESERVED_CODE1	0x25
NX_SOCKET_UNBOUND	0x26
NX_NOT_CREATED	0x27
NX_SOCKETS_BOUND	0x28
NX_NO_RESPONSE	0x29
NX_IPV4_UDP_PACKET	44
NX_UDP_PACKET	44
NX_POOL_DELETED	0x30
NX_ALREADY_RELEASED	0x31
NX_LINK_USER_COMMAND	50
NX_RESERVED_CODE2	0x32
NX_MAX_LISTEN	0x33
NX_DUPLICATE_LISTEN	0x34
NX_NOT_CLOSED	0x35

---

---

NX_NOT_LISTEN_STATE	0x36
NX_IN_PROGRESS	0x37
NX_NOT_CONNECTED	0x38
NX_IPV4_TCP_PACKET	56
NX_TCP_PACKET	56
NX_WINDOW_OVERFLOW	0x39
NX_IP_IGMP_EVENT	0x00000040
NX_IP_IGMP_ENABLED	0x0040
NX_ALREADY_SUSPENDED	0x40
NX_DISCONNECT_FAILED	0x41
NX_STILL_BOUND	0x42
NX_NOT_SUCCESSFUL	0x43
NX_UNHANDLED_COMMAND	0x44
NX_NO_FREE_PORTS	0x45
NX_INVALID_PORT	0x46
NX_INVALID_RELISTEN	0x47
NX_CONNECTION_PENDING	0x48
NX_TX_QUEUE_DEPTH	0x49
NX_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	0x4A
NX_NOT_SUPPORTED	0x4B
NX_TCP_KEEPALIVE_RETRY	75
NX_INVALID_INTERFACE	0x4C
NX_ARP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_ICMP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_IGMP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_IP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_IP_PERIODIC_RATE	100
NX_PACKET_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_RARP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_TCP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_UDP_DEBUG_LOG_SIZE	100
NX_IP_TCP_EVENT	0x00000080
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE	0x00000080
NX_IP_RARP_COMPLETE	0x0080
NX_NOT_IMPLEMENTED	0x4A

---

---

NX_IP_CLASS_C_HOSTID	0x000000FF
NX_IP_MULTICAST_UPPER	0x00000100
NX_IP_TCP_FAST_EVENT	0x00000100
NX_IP_DRIVER_PACKET_EVENT	0x00000200
NX_IP_IGMP_ENABLE_EVENT	0x00000400
NX_IP_DRIVER_DEFERRED_EVENT	0x00000800
NX_ARP_PROTOCOL_TYPE	0x0800
NX_RARP_PROTOCOL_TYPE	0x0800
NX_IP_TCP_CLEANUP_DEFERRED	0x00001000
NX_TCP_KEEPALIVE_INITIAL	7200
NX_FRAG_OFFSET_MASK	0x00001FFF
NX_IP_OFFSET_MASK	0x00001FFF
NX_IP_MORE_FRAGMENT	0x00002000
NX_MORE_FRAGMENTS	0x00002000
NX_IP_FRAGMENT_MASK	0x00003FFF
NX_TCP_MSS_SIZE	16384
NX_DONT_FRAGMENT	0x00004000
NX_IP_DONT_FRAGMENT	0x00004000
NX_SEARCH_PORT_START	30000
NX_IP_CLASS_B_HOSTID	0x0000FFFF
NX_IP_PACKET_SIZE_MASK	0x0000FFFF
NX_LOWER_16_MASK	0x0000FFFF
NX_MAX_PORT	0xFFFF
NX_IP_ICMP	0x00010000
NX_TCP_FIN_BIT	0x00010000
NX_CARRY_BIT	0x10000
NX_IP_IGMP	0x00020000
NX_IP_MIN_COST	0x00020000
NX_TCP_SYN_BIT	0x00020000
NX_IP_MAX_RELIABLE	0x00040000
NX_TCP_RST_BIT	0x00040000
NX_IP_TCP	0x00060000
NX_IP_MAX_DATA	0x00080000
NX_TCP_PSH_BIT	0x00080000
NX_IP_MIN_DELAY	0x00100000

---

---

NX_TCP_ACK_BIT	0x00100000
NX_IP_UDP	0x00110000
NX_TCP_CONTROL_MASK	0x00170000
NX_TCP_URG_BIT6	0x00200000
NX_IP_MULTICAST_MASK	0x007FFFFFFF
NX_IP_PROTOCOL_MASK	0x00FF0000
NX_IP_TOS_MASK	0x00FF0000
NX_IGMP_ROUTER_QUERY_TYPE	0x01000000
NX_TCP_OPTION_END	0x01010402
NX_IGMP_HOST_RESPONSE_TYPE	0x02000000
NX_TCP_MSS_OPTION	0x02040000
NX_IGMP_TYPE_MASK	0x0F000000
NX_IP_LENGTH_MASK	0x0F000000
NX_IGMP_MAX_RESP_TIME_MASK	0x00FF0000
NX_IP_CLASS_A_HOSTID	0x00FFFFFF
NX_IP_CLASS_D_GROUP	0x0FFFFFFF
NX_IGMP_VERSION	0x10000000
NX_IGMP_HOST_V2_JOIN_TYPE	0x16000000
NX_IGMP_HOST_V2_LEAVE_TYPE	0x17000000
NX_IP_CLASS_C_NETID	0x1FFFFFF0
NX_IP_CLASS_B_NETID	0x3FFF0000
NX_IP_VERSION	0x45000000
NX_IP_ID	0x49502020
NX_TCP_HEADER_SIZE	0x50000000
NX_PACKET_POOL_ID	0x5041434B
NX_TCP_ID	0x54435020
NX_UDP_ID	0x55445020
NX_IP_MULTICAST_LOWER	0x5E000000
NX_IP_CLASS_A_NETID	0x7F000000
NX_TCP_SYN_HEADER	0x70000000
NX_IP_LOOPBACK_FIRST	0x7F000000
NX_IP_LOOPBACK_LAST	0x7FFFFFFF
NX_IP_CLASS_A_MASK	0x80000000
NX_IP_CLASS_B_TYPE	0x80000000
NX_PACKET_ALLOCATED	0xAAAAAAAA

---

---

NX_PACKET_READY	0xBBBBBBBB
NX_IP_CLASS_B_MASK	0xC0000000
NX_IP_CLASS_C_TYPE	0xC0000000
NX_DRIVER_TX_DONE	0xDDDDDDDD
NX_IP_CLASS_C_MASK	0xE0000000
NX_IP_CLASS_D_TYPE	0xE0000000
NX_PACKET_ENQUEUED	0xEEEEEEEE
NX_IGMP_VERSION_MASK	0xF0000000
NX_IP_CLASS_D_MASK	0xF0000000
NX_TCP_HEADER_MASK	0xF0000000
NX_ALL_HOSTS_ADDRESS	0xFE000001
NX_IGMPV2_TYPE_MASK	0xFF000000
NX_IP_TIME_TO_LIVE_MASK	0xFF000000
NX_IP_ALL_EVENTS	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_IP_LIMITED_BROADCAST	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_PACKET_FREE	0xFFFFFFFF
NX_WAIT_FOREVER	0xFFFFFFFF



## ***NetX Data Types***

---

- NX\_ARP 408
- NX\_INTERFACE 408
- NX\_IP 411
- NX\_IP\_DRIVER 411
- NX\_IP\_ROUTING\_ENTRY 412
- NX\_PACKET 412
- NX\_PACKET\_POOL 412
- NX\_TCP\_LISTEN 412
- NX\_TCP\_SOCKET 414
- NX\_UDP\_SOCKET 414





```

ULONG nx_ip_unknown_protocols_received;
ULONG nx_ip_transmit_resource_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_transmit_no_route_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_receive_packets_dropped;
ULONG nx_ip_receive_checksum_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_send_packets_dropped;
ULONG nx_ip_total_fragment_requests;
ULONG nx_ip_successful_fragment_requests;
ULONG nx_ip_fragment_failures;
ULONG nx_ip_total_fragments_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_total_fragments_received;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_requests_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_requests_received;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_responses_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_responses_received;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_aged_entries;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_invalid_messages;
ULONG nx_ip_arp_static_entries;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_packets_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_bytes_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_packets_received;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_bytes_received;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_invalid_packets;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_no_port_for_delivery;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_receive_packets_dropped;
ULONG nx_ip_udp_checksum_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_packets_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_bytes_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_packets_received;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_bytes_received;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_invalid_packets;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_receive_packets_dropped;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_checksum_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_connections;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_passive_connections;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_active_connections;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_disconnections;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_connections_dropped;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_retransmit_packets;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_resets_received;
ULONG nx_ip_tcp_resets_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_icmp_total_messages_received;
ULONG nx_ip_icmp_checksum_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_icmp_invalid_packets;
ULONG nx_ip_icmp_unhandled_messages;
ULONG nx_ip_pings_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_ping_timeouts;
ULONG nx_ip_ping_threads_suspended;
ULONG nx_ip_ping_responses_received;
ULONG nx_ip_pings_received;
ULONG nx_ip_pings_responded_to;
ULONG nx_ip_igmp_invalid_packets;
ULONG nx_ip_igmp_reports_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_igmp_queries_received;
ULONG nx_ip_igmp_checksum_errors;
ULONG nx_ip_igmp_groups_joined;

#ifdef NX_DISABLE_IGMPV2
ULONG
#endif
nx_ip_igmp_router_version;

ULONG nx_ip_rarp_requests_sent;
ULONG nx_ip_rarp_responses_received;
ULONG nx_ip_rarp_invalid_messages;
VOID (*nx_ip_forward_packet_process)
    (struct NX_IP_STRUCT *, NX_PACKET *);

ULONG nx_ip_packet_id;
struct NX_PACKET_POOL_STRUCT *nx_ip_default_packet_pool;
TX_MUTEX nx_ip_protection;
UINT nx_ip_initialize_done;
NX_PACKET *nx_ip_driver_deferred_packet_head;
NX_PACKET *nx_ip_driver_deferred_packet_tail;

```

```

VOID
NX_PACKET
UINT
#endif /* NX_ENABLE_IP_RAW_PACKET_FILTER */
NX_PACKET
ULONG
ULONG
TX_THREAD
ULONG
TX_THREAD
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
TX_TIMER
VOID
VOID
VOID
NX_PACKET
NX_PACKET
NX_PACKET
VOID
VOID
VOID
NX_INTERFACE
*nx_ip_igmp_interfacejoin_list[NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS];
ULONG
ULONG
UINT
ULONG
nx_ip_igmp_group_loopback_enable[NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS]
void
void
void
NX_PACKET
ULONG
void
void
NX_PACKET
TX_THREAD
ULONG
struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT
struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT
ULONG
void
UINT
struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT
struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT
ULONG
void
void
void
(*nx_ip_driver_deferred_packet_handler)(struct
    NX_IP_STRUCT *, NX_PACKET *);
*nx_ip_deferred_received_packet_head;
*nx_ip_deferred_received_packet_tail;
(*nx_ip_raw_ip_processing)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    ULONG, NX_PACKET *);
(*nx_ip_raw_packet_filter)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    ULONG, NX_PACKET *);
*nx_ip_raw_received_packet_head;
*nx_ip_raw_received_packet_tail;
nx_ip_raw_received_packet_count;
nx_ip_raw_received_packet_max;
*nx_ip_raw_packet_suspension_list;
nx_ip_raw_packet_suspended_count;
nx_ip_thread;
nx_ip_events;
nx_ip_periodic_timer;
(*nx_ip_fragment_processing)(struct
    NX_IP_DRIVER_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_fragment_assembly)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_fragment_timeout_check)
    (struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
*nx_ip_timeout_fragment;
*nx_ip_received_fragment_head;
*nx_ip_received_fragment_tail;
*nx_ip_fragment_assembly_head;
*nx_ip_fragment_assembly_tail;
(*nx_ip_address_change_notify)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    VOID *);
*nx_ip_address_change_notify_additional_info;
nx_ip_igmp_join_list[NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS];
nx_ip_igmp_join_count[NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS];
nx_ip_igmp_update_time[NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS];
nx_ip_igmp_global_loopback_enable;
(*nx_ip_igmp_packet_receive)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_igmp_periodic_processing)
    (struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_igmp_queue_process)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
*nx_ip_igmp_queue_head;
nx_ip_icmp_sequence;
(*nx_ip_icmp_packet_receive)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_icmp_queue_process)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
*nx_ip_icmp_queue_head;
nx_ip_icmp_ping_suspension_list;
nx_ip_icmp_ping_suspended_count;
*nx_ip_udp_port_table[NX_UDP_PORT_TABLE_SIZE];
*nx_ip_udp_created_sockets_ptr;
nx_ip_udp_created_sockets_count;
(*nx_ip_udp_packet_receive)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT *);
nx_ip_udp_port_search_start;
*nx_ip_tcp_port_table[NX_TCP_PORT_TABLE_SIZE];
*nx_ip_tcp_created_sockets_ptr;
nx_ip_tcp_created_sockets_count;
(*nx_ip_tcp_packet_receive)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *,
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_tcp_periodic_processing)
    (struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_tcp_fast_periodic_processing)(struct
    NX_IP_STRUCT *);

```

```

void
NX_PACKET

ULONG
struct NX_TCP_LISTEN_STRUCT
struct NX_TCP_LISTEN_STRUCT
struct NX_TCP_LISTEN_STRUCT
UINT
UINT
TX_TIMER
struct NX_ARP_STRUCT
struct NX_ARP_STRUCT
struct NX_ARP_STRUCT
ULONG
NX_PACKET

UINT

void
void
void

void

void
void
struct NX_ARP_STRUCT
ULONG
void
void
NX_PACKET

struct NX_IP_STRUCT

void
void

NX_INTERFACE
#ifdef NX_ENABLE_IP_STATIC_ROUTING
NX_IP_ROUTING_ENTRY
ULONG
#endif /* NX_ENABLE_IP_STATIC_ROUTING */

VOID

#ifdef NX_ENABLE_IP_PACKET_FILTER
UINT
#endif /* NX_ENABLE_IP_PACKET_FILTER */
} NX_IP;

typedef struct NX_IP_DRIVER_STRUCT
{
    UINT
    UINT
    ULONG
    ULONG
    NX_PACKET
    ULONG
    struct NX_IP_STRUCT
    NX_INTERFACE
} NX_IP_DRIVER;

typedef struct NX_IP_ROUTING_ENTRY_STRUCT
{
    ULONG
    ULONG

```

```

(*nx_ip_tcp_queue_process)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
*nx_ip_tcp_queue_head;
*nx_ip_tcp_queue_tail;
nx_ip_tcp_received_packet_count;
nx_ip_tcp_server_listen_reqs[NX_MAX_LISTEN_REQUESTS];
*nx_ip_tcp_available_listen_requests;
*nx_ip_tcp_active_listen_requests;
nx_ip_tcp_port_search_start;
nx_ip_fast_periodic_timer_created;
nx_ip_fast_periodic_timer;
*nx_ip_arp_table[NX_ARP_TABLE_SIZE];
*nx_ip_arp_static_list;
*nx_ip_arp_dynamic_list;
nx_ip_arp_dynamic_active_count;
*nx_ip_arp_deferred_received_packet_head;
*nx_ip_arp_deferred_received_packet_tail;
(*nx_ip_arp_allocate)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *, struct
    NX_ARP_STRUCT **, UINT);
(*nx_ip_arp_periodic_update)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_arp_queue_process)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_arp_packet_send)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *, ULONG
    destination_ip, NX_INTERFACE
    *nx_interface);
(*nx_ip_arp_gratuitous_response_handler)(struct
    NX_IP_STRUCT *, NX_PACKET *);
(*nx_ip_arp_collision_notify_response_handler)
    (void *);
*nx_ip_arp_collision_notify_parameter;
nx_ip_arp_collision_notify_ip_address;
*nx_ip_arp_cache_memory;
nx_ip_arp_total_entries;
(*nx_ip_rarp_periodic_update)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
(*nx_ip_rarp_queue_process)(struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
*nx_ip_rarp_deferred_received_packet_head;
*nx_ip_rarp_deferred_received_packet_tail;
*nx_ip_created_next;
*nx_ip_created_previous;
*nx_ip_reserved_ptr;
(*nx_tcp_deferred_cleanup_check)
    (struct NX_IP_STRUCT *);
nx_ip_interface[NX_MAX_IP_INTERFACES];
nx_ip_routing_table[NX_IP_ROUTING_TABLE_SIZE];
nx_ip_routing_table_entry_count;

(*nx_ip_link_status_change_callback)(struct
    NX_IP_STRUCT *, UINT, UINT);

(*nx_ip_packet_filter)(VOID *, UINT);

nx_ip_driver_command;
nx_ip_driver_status;
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw;
nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw;
*nx_ip_driver_packet;
*nx_ip_driver_return_ptr;
*nx_ip_driver_ptr;
*nx_ip_driver_interface;

nx_ip_routing_dest_ip;
nx_ip_routing_net_mask;

```

```

        ULONG
        NX_INTERFACE
    } NX_IP_ROUTING_ENTRY;

typedef struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT
{
    struct NX_PACKET_POOL_STRUCT
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT
    struct NX_PACKET_STRUCT
    ULONG
    struct NX_INTERFACE_STRUCT
    ULONG
    UCHAR
    UCHAR
    UCHAR
    UCHAR

    nx_ip_routing_next_hop_address;
    *nx_ip_routing_entry_ip_interface;

    *nx_packet_pool_owner;
    *nx_packet_queue_next;
    *nx_packet_tcp_queue_next;
    *nx_packet_next;
    *nx_packet_last;
    *nx_packet_fragment_next;
    nx_packet_length;
    *nx_packet_ip_interface;
    nx_packet_next_hop_address;
    *nx_packet_data_start;
    *nx_packet_data_end;
    *nx_packet_prepend_ptr;
    *nx_packet_append_ptr;

    nx_packet_pad[NX_PACKET_HEADER_PAD_SIZE];

    nx_packet_pool_id;
    *nx_packet_pool_name;
    nx_packet_pool_available;
    nx_packet_pool_total;
    nx_packet_pool_empty_requests;
    nx_packet_pool_empty_suspensions;
    nx_packet_pool_invalid_releases;
    *nx_packet_pool_available_list;
    *nx_packet_pool_start;
    nx_packet_pool_size;
    nx_packet_pool_payload_size;
    *nx_packet_pool_suspension_list;
    nx_packet_pool_suspended_count;
    *nx_packet_pool_created_next;
    *nx_packet_pool_created_previous;

} NX_PACKET_POOL;

typedef struct NX_TCP_LISTEN_STRUCT
{
    UINT
    VOID

    NX_TCP_SOCKET
    ULONG
    ULONG
    NX_PACKET

    nx_tcp_listen_port;
    (*nx_tcp_listen_callback)(NX_TCP_SOCKET *socket_ptr,
                             UINT port);

    *nx_tcp_listen_socket_ptr;
    nx_tcp_listen_queue_maximum;
    nx_tcp_listen_queue_current;
    *nx_tcp_listen_queue_head;
    *nx_tcp_listen_queue_tail;
    *nx_tcp_listen_next;
    *nx_tcp_listen_previous;

} NX_TCP_LISTEN;

typedef struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT
{
    ULONG
    CHAR
    UINT
    UINT
    ULONG
    NXD_ADDRESS
    UINT
    ULONG

    nx_tcp_socket_id;
    *nx_tcp_socket_name;
    nx_tcp_socket_client_type;
    nx_tcp_socket_port;
    nx_tcp_socket_mss;
    nx_tcp_socket_connect_ip;
    nx_tcp_socket_connect_port;
    nx_tcp_socket_connect_mss;

```

```

struct NX_INTERFACE_STRUCT
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    UINT
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    USHORT
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    UCHAR
    UCHAR
    ULONG
    UINT
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    ULONG
    struct NX_IP_STRUCT
        ULONG
        UINT
        ULONG
        ULONG
        NX_PACKET

        ULONG
        ULONG
        NX_PACKET

        ULONG
        ULONG
        ULONG
        ULONG
        ULONG
    #ifdef NX_ENABLE_TCP_WINDOW_SCALING
        ULONG
        ULONG
        ULONG
    #endif /* NX_ENABLE_TCP_WINDOW_SCALING */
    struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT
        TX_THREAD
        TX_THREAD
        ULONG
        TX_THREAD
        ULONG
        TX_THREAD
        TX_THREAD
        TX_THREAD
        TX_THREAD
        TX_THREAD
        TX_THREAD
        struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT

        VOID

    #ifndef NX_DISABLE_EXTENDED_NOTIFY_SUPPORT
        *nx_tcp_socket_connect_interface;
        nx_tcp_socket_next_hop_address;
        nx_tcp_socket_connect_mss2;
        nx_tcp_socket_tx_slow_start_threshold;
        nx_tcp_socket_state;
        nx_tcp_socket_tx_sequence;
        nx_tcp_socket_rx_sequence;
        nx_tcp_socket_rx_sequence_acked;
        nx_tcp_socket_delayed_ack_timeout;
        nx_tcp_socket_fin_sequence;
        nx_tcp_socket_fin_received;
        nx_tcp_socket_tx_window_advertised;
        nx_tcp_socket_tx_window_congestion;
        nx_tcp_socket_tx_outstanding_bytes;
        nx_tcp_socket_tx_sequence_recover;
        nx_tcp_socket_previous_highest_ack;
        nx_tcp_socket_fast_recovery;
        nx_tcp_socket_reserved[3];
        nx_tcp_socket_ack_n_packet_counter;
        nx_tcp_socket_duplicated_ack_received;
        nx_tcp_socket_rx_window_default;
        nx_tcp_socket_rx_window_current;
        nx_tcp_socket_rx_window_last_sent;
        nx_tcp_socket_packets_sent;
        nx_tcp_socket_bytes_sent;
        nx_tcp_socket_packets_received;
        nx_tcp_socket_bytes_received;
        nx_tcp_socket_retransmit_packets;
        nx_tcp_socket_checksum_errors;
        *nx_tcp_socket_ip_ptr;
        nx_tcp_socket_type_of_service;
        nx_tcp_socket_time_to_live;
        nx_tcp_socket_fragment_enable;
        nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_count;
        *nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_head;
        *nx_tcp_socket_receive_queue_tail;
        nx_tcp_socket_transmit_queue_maximum;
        nx_tcp_socket_transmit_sent_count;
        *nx_tcp_socket_transmit_sent_head;
        nx_tcp_socket_transmit_sent_tail;
        nx_tcp_socket_timeout;
        nx_tcp_socket_timeout_rate;
        nx_tcp_socket_timeout_retries;
        nx_tcp_socket_timeout_max_retries;
        nx_tcp_socket_timeout_shift;

        nx_tcp_socket_rx_window_maximum;
        nx_tcp_rcv_win_scale_value;
        nx_tcp_snd_win_scale_value;

        nx_tcp_socket_keepalive_timeout;
        nx_tcp_socket_keepalive_retries;
        *nx_tcp_socket_bound_next;
        *nx_tcp_socket_bound_previous;
        *nx_tcp_socket_bind_in_progress;
        *nx_tcp_socket_receive_suspension_list;
        nx_tcp_socket_receive_suspended_count;
        *nx_tcp_socket_transmit_suspension_list;
        nx_tcp_socket_transmit_suspended_count;
        *nx_tcp_socket_connect_suspended_thread;
        *nx_tcp_socket_disconnect_suspended_thread;
        *nx_tcp_socket_bind_suspension_list;
        nx_tcp_socket_bind_suspended_count;
        *nx_tcp_socket_created_next;
        *nx_tcp_socket_created_previous;
        (*nx_tcp_urgent_data_callback)(struct
            NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT *socket_ptr);

```

```

UINT                                (*nx_tcp_socket_syn_received_notify)(struct
                                    NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT *socket_ptr,
                                    NX_PACKET *packet_ptr);
VOID                                (*nx_tcp_establish_notify)(struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT
                                    *socket_ptr);
VOID                                (*nx_tcp_disconnect_complete_notify)(struct
                                    NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT *socket_ptr);
VOID                                (*nx_tcp_timed_wait_callback)(struct
                                    NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT *socket_ptr);
#endif
VOID                                (*nx_tcp_disconnect_callback)(struct
                                    NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT *socket_ptr);
VOID                                (*nx_tcp_receive_callback)(struct NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT
                                    *socket_ptr);
VOID                                (*nx_tcp_socket_window_update_notify)(struct
                                    NX_TCP_SOCKET_STRUCT *socket_ptr);
void                                *nx_tcp_socket_reserved_ptr;
ULONG                                nx_tcp_socket_transmit_queue_maximum_default;
UINT                                nx_tcp_socket_keepalive_enabled;
} NX_TCP_SOCKET;

typedef struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT
{
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_id;
    CHAR                                *nx_udp_socket_name;
    UINT                                nx_udp_socket_port;
    struct NX_IP_STRUCT                *nx_udp_socket_ip_ptr;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_packets_sent;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_bytes_sent;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_packets_received;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_bytes_received;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_invalid_packets;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_packets_dropped;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_checksum_errors;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_type_of_service;
    UINT                                nx_udp_socket_time_to_live;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_fragment_enable;
    UINT                                nx_udp_socket_disable_checksum;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_receive_count;
    ULONG                                nx_udp_socket_queue_maximum;
    NX_PACKET                            *nx_udp_socket_receive_head;
    NX_PACKET                            *nx_udp_socket_receive_tail;
    struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT        *nx_udp_socket_bound_next;
    struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT        *nx_udp_socket_bound_previous;
    TX_THREAD                            *nx_udp_socket_bind_in_progress;
    TX_THREAD                            *nx_udp_socket_receive_suspension_list;
    TX_THREAD                            *nx_udp_socket_receive_suspended_count;
    TX_THREAD                            *nx_udp_socket_bind_suspension_list;
    TX_THREAD                            *nx_udp_socket_bind_suspended_count;
    struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT        *nx_udp_socket_created_next;
    struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT        *nx_udp_socket_created_previous;
    VOID                                (*nx_udp_receive_callback)(struct NX_UDP_SOCKET_STRUCT
                                    *socket_ptr);
    void                                *nx_udp_socket_reserved_ptr;
    struct NX_INTERFACE_STRUCT        *nx_udp_socket_ip_interface;
} NX_UDP_SOCKET;

```

## ***BSD-Compatible Socket API***

## BSD-Compatible Socket API

The BSD-Compatible Socket API supports a subset of the BSD Sockets API calls (with some limitations) by utilizing NetX Duo® primitives underneath. Both IPv6 and IPv4 protocols and network addressing are supported. This BSD-Compatible Sockets API layer should perform as fast or slightly faster than typical BSD implementations because this API utilizes internal NetX Duo primitives and bypasses unnecessary NetX error checking.

Configurable options allow the host application to define the maximum number of sockets, TCP maximum window size, and depth of listen queue.

Due to performance and architecture constraints, this BSD-Compatible Sockets API does not support all BSD Sockets calls. In addition, not all BSD options are available for the BSD services, specifically the following:

- ***select()*** call works with only ***fd\_set*** \*readfds, other arguments in this call e.g., writefds, exceptfds are not supported.
- The “int flags” argument is not supported for ***send()***, ***recv()***, ***sendto()***, and ***recvfrom ()*** calls.
- The BSD-Compatible Socket API supports only limited set of BSD Sockets calls.

The source code is designed for simplicity and is comprised of only two files, ***nxd\_bsd.c*** and ***nxd\_bsd.h***. Installation requires adding these two files to the build project (not the NetX library) and creating the host application which will use BSD Socket service calls. The ***nxd\_bsd.h*** file must also be included in your application source. Sample demo files for both IPv4 and IPv6 based applications are included with the distribution which is freely available with NetX Duo. Further details are available in the



help and Readme files bundled with the BSD-Compatible Socket API package.

The BSD-Compatible Sockets API supports the following BSD Sockets API calls:

---

INT	<i>bsd_initialize</i> (NX_IP *default_ip, NX_PACKET_POOL *default_pool, CHAR *bsd_memory_not_used);
INT	<i>getpeername</i> ( INT sockID, struct sockaddr *remoteAddress, INT *addressLength);
INT	<i>getsockname</i> ( INT sockID, struct sockaddr *localAddress, INT *addressLength);
INT	<i>recvfrom</i> (INT sockID, CHAR *buffer, INT buffersize, INT flags, struct sockaddr *fromAddr, INT *fromAddrLen);
INT	<i>recv</i> (INT sockID, VOID *rcvBuffer, INT bufferLength, INT flags);
INT	<i>sendto</i> (INT sockID, CHAR *msg, INT msgLength, INT flags, struct sockaddr *destAddr, INT destAddrLen);
INT	<i>send</i> (INT sockID, const CHAR *msg, INT msgLength, INT flags);
INT	<i>accept</i> (INT sockID, struct sockaddr *ClientAddress, INT *addressLength);
INT	<i>listen</i> (INT sockID, INT backlog);
INT	<i>bind</i> (INT sockID, struct sockaddr *localAddress, INT addressLength);
INT	<i>connect</i> (INT sockID, struct sockaddr *remoteAddress, INT addressLength);
INT	<i>socket</i> ( INT protocolFamily, INT type, INT protocol);
INT	<i>soc_close</i> ( INT sockID);
INT	<i>select</i> (INT nfds, fd_set *readfds, fd_set *writefds, fd_set *exceptfds, struct timeval *timeout);
VOID	<i>FD_SET</i> (INT fd, fd_set *fdset);
VOID	<i>FD_CLR</i> (INT fd, fd_set *fdset);
INT	<i>FD_ISSET</i> (INT fd, fd_set *fdset);
VOID	<i>FD_ZERO</i> (fd_set *fdset);



## ***ASCII Character Codes***

---

## ASCII Character Codes in HEX

		<i>most significant nibble</i>							
		0_	1_	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_
<i>least significant nibble</i>	_0	NUL	DLE	SP	0	@	P	'	p
	_1	SOH	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
	_2	STX	DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r
	_3	ETX	DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s
	_4	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	T	d	t
	_5	ENQ	NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u
	_6	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v
	_7	BEL	ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w
	_8	BS	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x
	_9	HT	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y
	_A	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z
	_B	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	\	}
	_C	FF	FS	,	<	L	\		
	_D	CR	GS	-	=	M	]	m	}
	_E	SO	RS	.	>	N	^	n	~
	_F	SI	US	/	?	O	_	o	DEL

# Index

---

## Symbols

`_nx_arp_packet_deferred_receive` 45, 373, 374  
`_nx_ip_driver_deferred_processing` 46, 370  
`_nx_ip_packet_deferred_receive` 46, 373  
`_nx_ip_packet_receive` 45, 373, 374  
`_nx_ip_thread_entry` 44  
`_nx_rarp_packet_deferred_receive` 45, 373, 374  
`_nx_version_id` 37

## Numerics

16-bit checksum that covers the IP header only 62  
48-bit address support 69

## A

accelerated software development process 20  
accepting a TCP server connection 254  
access functions 45  
ACK  
    returned 103  
adding deferred packet logic to the NetX IP helper thread 374  
adding static route 202  
address resolution activities 44  
Address Resolution Protocol (see ARP) in IPv4 69  
address specifications  
    broadcast 59  
    multicast 59  
    unicast 59  
all hosts address 81

allocating a packet from specified pool 208  
allocating memory packets 49  
ANSI C 17, 21  
appending data to end of packet 212  
application downloaded to target hardware 24  
application interface calls 43  
application source and link 27  
application specific modifications 17  
application threads 27, 42  
ARP 27  
    processing 69  
ARP aging 74  
    disabled 74  
ARP cache 69, 70  
ARP dynamic entries 70  
ARP Enable 69  
ARP enable service 70  
ARP entry from dynamic ARP entry list 70  
ARP entry setup 70  
ARP information gathering  
    disabling 31  
ARP messages 71  
    Ethernet destination address 72  
    Ethernet source address 72  
    frame type 72  
    hardware size 72  
    hardware type 72  
    operation code 73  
    protocol size 73  
    protocol type 72  
    sender Ethernet address 73  
    sender IP address 73  
    target Ethernet address 73  
    target IP address 73  
ARP packet processing 44  
ARP packets  
    format 73

- ARP periodic processing in IPv4 44
- ARP request information in the ARP cache 31
- ARP request message 71
- ARP requests 70, 71
- ARP response 71
- ARP response send 361
- ARP response send request 362
- ARP send 361
- ARP send packet request 361
- ARP static entries 70
- ARP statistics and errors 74
- array of internal ARP mapping data structures 70
- ASCII
  - character codes in HEX 420
- asynchronous events 45
- attach interface 364
- attach interface request 364, 365
- attaching network interface to IP instance 184
- automatic invalidation of dynamic ARP entries 74

## B

- big endian 60, 74, 76, 79, 84, 85, 94
- binding client TCP socket to TCP port 238
- binding UDP socket to UDP port 324
- black box 17
- broadcast addresses 59
- BSD-compatible socket API 18
- building a NetX application 27
- building a TCP header 102
- building a valid NetX packet 372
- bypassing changes to see if problem changes 28
- byte swapping on little endian environments 29

## C

- C compilers 11
- calculation of capacity of pool 56
- callback function 45

- calling thread's context 43
- causing IP instance to leave specified multicast group 152
- characteristics of packet memory pool 57
- checking status of an IP instance 188, 206
- checksum 33, 43
- checksum calculation 103
- checksum logic
  - disabling 33
- checksum logic on IP packets sent
  - disabling 32
- checksum logic on received TCP packets
  - disabling 33
- checksum processing in lower-priority threads 43
- Class D IP address 80
- Class D multicast addresses 81
- classes of IP addresses 58
- client binding 105
- client connection requests 102
- commercial network stacks 17
- compatibility with legacy NetX Ethernet drivers 65
- compilation and link with NetX library 26
- complex protocols 48
- configuration 28
- configuring socket's transmit parameters 312
- connecting a client TCP socket 240
- connection events 96
- connection management 49
- connection request to a TCP server 96
- connection service 105
- connectionless protocols 59
- connectionless sending and receiving of data 49
- copying packet 210
- CRC processing 33
- create services 43
- creating a packet pool in specified memory area 220
- creating a static IP to hardware mapping in ARP cache 130
- creating a TCP client or server socket 276
- creating a UDP socket 332

- creating an IP instance 160
- creating IP instance with IP address of zero 75
- creating IP instances 66
- Customer Support Center 12

## D

- data encapsulation 49
- data transfer between network members 84
- datagram
  - definition 61
- datagrams larger than underlying network driver's MTU size 68
- debug packet dumping 29
- debugging 24
- default packet pool 42, 66
- deferred driver packet handling 29
- deferred IP packet reception 44
- deferred processing event 370
- deferred processing queue 46
- deferred receive packet handling 374
- deferring interrupt processing 46
- deleting a previously created IP instance 162
- deleting a previously created packet pool 222
- deleting a static IP to hardware mapping in the ARP cache 132
- deleting a TCP socket 280
- deleting a UDP socket 334
- deleting all static ARP entries 128
- deleting static route 204
- deletion of an IP instance 357, 358
- delivering packet to first suspended thread 104
- demo\_threadx.c 26
- demonstration system 27
- destination address of the packet 67
- disabling checksum for the UDP socket 328
- disabling checksum logic on received IP packets 32
- disabling error checking 29
- disabling IGMP information gathering 31
- disabling IGMP loopback 144
- disabling IGMP v2 support 31
- disabling IP packet forwarding 168
- disabling IP packet fragmenting 172
- disabling link 357
- disabling listening for client connection on TCP port 270
- disabling NetX support on the 127.0.0.1 loopback interface 32
- disabling raw packet sending/receiving 192
- disabling reset processing during disconnect 33
- disabling Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) 230
- disabling the UDP checksum logic 87
- disconnect callbacks 44
- disconnect processing 100
- disconnecting client and server socket connections 282, 284, 286, 310
- disconnection services 105
- driver deferred processing 370
- driver entry 354
- driver entry function 355
- driver initialization 44, 66, 355
- driver input 372
- driver introduction 354
- driver output 371
- driver output function 359
- driver request data structure 355
- driver requests 355
- duplex type request 367
- dynamic ARP entries 70
- dynamically mapping 32-bit IP addresses 69

## E

- ease of use 20
- easy-to-use interface 20
- embedded development on Windows or Linux 24
- embedded network applications 19
- enable link 357
- enable services 43

- enabling Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) 118
- enabling checksum for the UDP socket 330
- enabling ICMP processing 78
- enabling IGMP loopback 146
- enabling Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) component 134
- enabling Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) component 140
- enabling IP packet forwarding 170
- enabling IP packet fragmenting 174
- enabling listening for client connection on TCP port 258
- enabling raw packet sending/receiving 194
- enabling Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) 232
- enabling static routing 32
- enabling TCP component of NetX 246
- enabling UDP component of NetX 316
- ensuring driver supplies ARP and IP packets 28
- entry point of internal IP thread 44
- Ethernet 69
- Ethernet ARP requests formats 72
- examining default packet pool 28
- examining NX\_IP structure 28
- external ping request 80
- extracting data from packet via an offset 214
- extracting IP and sending port from UDP datagram 350
- extracting network parameters from UDP packet 322

## F

- fast response 19
- fields of the IPv4 header 61
- finding next available TCP port 248
- finding next available UDP port 318
- fixed-size memory blocks 51
- fixed-size packet pools 51
- flow control for data transfer 102
- fragmentation 51
- fragmented IP packets 64

- freeing up processor cycles 16
- functional components of NetX 39

## G

- gateway IPv4 address 59
- getting allocation errors 369
- getting duplex type 367
- getting error count 367
- getting length of packet data 218
- getting link speed 366
- getting link status 365
- getting MSS of socket 292
- getting MSS of socket peer 294
- getting port number bound to client TCP socket 242
- getting receive packet count 368
- getting transmit packet count 369
- global data structures 25
- guide conventions 10

## H

- handling
  - periodic processing 66
- handling connection and disconnection actions 104
- handling deferred packet processing 66
- head and tail pointers of the transmit queue 372
- headers 49
- headers in the TCP/IP implementation 60, 94
- higher-level protocols 60
- host system considerations 24

## I

- I/O 42
- IBM-PC hosts 24
- ICMP 49
- ICMP header format 79
- ICMP information gathering
  - disabling 31



- ICMP ping message format 79
- ICMP ping processing 44
- ICMP statistics and errors 78
- ICMPv4 enable 78
- ICMPv6 Services in NetX Duo 80
- IGMP 49
- IGMP enable 81
- IGMP header 82
- IGMP header format 83
- IGMP initialization 81
- IGMP periodic processing 44
- IGMP processing 44, 81
- IGMP query messages 83
  - format 83
- IGMP report 81
- IGMP report message 82
- IGMP report message format 82
- IGMP statistics and errors 84
- image download to target 27
- implemented as a C library 16
- incoming IP packets 45
- increased throughput 20
- increasing stack size during the IP create 66
- initial execution 42
- initialization 42, 43, 94
  - NetX system 27
  - of driver 44
- initializing NetX system 236
- in-line processing 16
- installation of ThreadX 26
- instruction image requirements 16
- interface and next hop address 95
- interface control block 63
- interface control block assigned to the packet 54
- internal component function calls 16
- internal IP send processing 359
- internal IP thread 42, 44, 46, 64
- internal IP thread calls 44
- internal transmit sent queue 103
- Internet Control Message Protocol (see ICMP) 77
- Internet Group Management Protocol (see IGMP) 80, 379
- Internet Protocol v4 57
- interrupt service routine 45
- invalidating all dynamic entries in ARP cache 114
- IP address 58
- IP address of the receiver or receivers 62
- IP address of the sender 62
- IP address structure 58
- IP checksum 63
- IP control block
  - NX\_IP 67
- IP create call 44
- IP create service 66
- IP data structure 42
- IP datagram 61
- IP fragment assembly timeouts 44
- IP fragment reassemble processing 45
- IP fragmentation
  - disabling 69
- IP fragmentation information 61
- IP header format 60
- IP helper thread 66, 104, 356
- IP information gathering
  - disabling 32
- IP instance 27, 66
  - control blocks 67
  - creation 42
- IP instances 62
- IP packet fragment assembly 44
- IP packets 45, 46
- IP periodic timers 45
- IP receive 64
- IP receive processing 64
- IP resources 42
- IP send 62
- IP send function 43
- IP statistics and errors 67
- IP version 4 61
- IP\_ADDRESS 59
- IPv4 16-bit identification 61
- IPv4 address
  - 13-bit fragment offset 62
  - 16-bit checksum 62
  - 16-bit total length 61
  - 32-bit destination IP address 62

- 32-bit source IP address 62
- 3-bit flags 61
- 4-bit header length 61
- 4-bit version 61
- 8-bit protocol 62
- 8-bit time to live (TTL) 62
- 8-bit type of service (TOS) 61
- gateway 59
- IPv4 address structure 58
- IPv4 header 60
- IPv4 header format 60
- IPv4 protocol 57
- IPv6 in NetX Duo 77
- IPv6 Options 37
- IPv6 Protocol 62
- ISR processing time 46
- issuing a command to the network driver
  - 164, 166

## J

- joined multicast groups 82
- joining a multicast group 82
- joining IP interface to specified multicast group 148
- joining the specified multicast group 150

## K

- keeping track of statistics and errors 90

## L

- last packet within the same network packet 54
- layering 49
- least significant 32-bits of physical address 360, 362
- least significant 32-bits of physical multicast address 363, 364
- line speed request 366
- link allocation error count request 369
- link enable call 44
- link error count request 368

- LINK INITIALIZE request 356
- link level 48
- link receive packet count request 368
- link status request 366
- link transmit packet count request 369
- linked-list manipulation 51
- linked-list processing 51
- listen callbacks 44
- listening for packets with the Ethernet address 81
- locating a physical hardware address given an IP address 122
- locating an IP address given a physical address 126
- logical connection point in the TCP protocol 95
- logical loopback interface 48
- long-word boundary 55
- low packet overhead path 87
- lowest layer protocol 48

## M

- maintaining relationship between IP address and physical hardware address 70
- management
  - Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) 378
  - Internet Protocol (IP) 379
  - Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) 381
  - Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) 382
- management-type protocols 49
- managing the flow of data 49
- maximum number of ARP retries without ARP response 30
- maximum number of entries in routing table 32
- maximum number of multicast groups that can be joined 31
- Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) 355
- memory areas
  - NetX objects 52

- ThreadX 52
- microprocessors 19
- minimizing dropped packets 374
- minimizing ISR processing 374
- most significant 32-bits of physical address 360, 362
- most significant 32-bits of physical multicast address 363, 364
- multicast addresses 59
- multicast group 80
- multicast group join 81, 363
- multicast group leave 364
- multicast groups on the primary network 82
- multicast IP addresses 81
- multicast routers 83
- multihome devices 95
- multihome hosts 45, 77
- multihome support service
  - `nx_igmp_multicast_interface_join` 48
  - `nx_ip_interface_address_get` 48
  - `nx_ip_interface_address_set` 48
  - `nx_ip_interface_attach` 48
  - `nx_ip_interface_info_get` 48
  - `nx_ip_interface_status_check` 48
  - `nx_ip_raw_packet_interface_send` 48
- multiple linked lists 70
- multiple network interfaces 63
- multiple physical network interfaces 46
- multiple pools of fixed-size network packets 49
- multiple thread suspension 56

## N

- network data packets 49
- network driver 17, 42, 45, 46, 68
- network driver entry function 354
- network driver's entry routine 354
- network hardware 20
- network layer 49
- network stack 17
- NetX ARP software 74
- NetX benefits 19
  - application migration path 21
  - development investment protection 21
  - development process 20
  - high-speed Internet connectivity 19
  - improved responsiveness 19
  - integrated with ThreadX 19, 21
  - network traffic 20
  - NetX architecture easy to use 20
  - new processor architecture 21
  - processing requirements on a single packet 20
  - processor-independent interface 20
  - protecting software investment 21
  - small memory requirements 19
  - ThreadX supported processors 21
- NetX callback functions 44
- NetX constants 387
  - alphabetic listings 388
- NetX data structures 27
- NetX data types 407
- NetX error checking API removal 29
- NetX IGMP software 84
- NetX IP send routine 17
- NetX IP software 67
- NetX packet management software 56
- NetX physical media drivers 353
- NetX protocol stack 19, 25
- NetX RARP software 77
- NetX runtime library 27
- NetX services 27, 107, 377
- NetX source code 24
- NetX system initialization 27
- NetX unique features 16
- NetX Version ID 37
- new application threads 27
- next packet within same network packet 54
- notifying application if IP address changes 154
- notifying application of each received packet 342
- notifying application of received packets 302
- notifying application of window size updates 314
- number of 32-bit words in the IP header 61

- number of bytes in entire network packet 54
- number of bytes in the memory area 56
- number of keepalive retries before connection is broken 35
- number of packets queued while waiting for an ARP response 30
- number of routers this datagram can pass 62
- number of seconds ARP entries remain valid 30
- number of seconds between ARP retries 30
- number of ThreadX timer ticks in one second 32
- nx\_api.h 26, 27, 29, 30, 31, 34, 35, 36, 37, 57, 59, 67, 91, 106
- NX\_ARP\_DISABLE\_AUTO\_ARP\_ENTRY 30
- nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entries\_invalidate 114
- nx\_arp\_dynamic\_entry\_set 116
- nx\_arp\_enable 69, 118
- NX\_ARP\_EXPIRATION\_RATE 30, 74
- nx\_arp\_hardware\_address\_find 122
- nx\_arp\_info\_get 75, 124
- nx\_arp\_ip\_address\_find 126
- NX\_ARP\_MAX\_QUEUE\_DEPTH 30, 63
- NX\_ARP\_MAXIMUM\_RETRIES 30, 71
- nx\_arp\_static\_entries\_delete 128
- nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_create 70, 130
- nx\_arp\_static\_entry\_delete 132
- NX\_ARP\_UPDATE\_RATE 30, 71
- NX\_DEBUG 28
- NX\_DEBUG\_PACKET 29
- NX\_DISABLE\_ARP\_INFO 31
- NX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING 29
- NX\_DISABLE\_FRAGMENTATION 31, 69
- NX\_DISABLE\_ICMP\_INFO 31
- NX\_DISABLE\_IGMP\_INFO 31
- NX\_DISABLE\_IGMPV2 31
- NX\_DISABLE\_IP\_INFO 32
- NX\_DISABLE\_IP\_RX\_CHECKSUM 32
- NX\_DISABLE\_IP\_TX\_CHECKSUM 32
- NX\_DISABLE\_LOOPBACK\_INTERFACE 32, 48
- NX\_DISABLE\_PACKET\_INFO 33
- NX\_DISABLE\_RARP\_INFO 33
- NX\_DISABLE\_RESET\_DISCONNECT 33
- NX\_DISABLE\_RX\_SIZE\_CHECKING 32
- NX\_DISABLE\_TCP\_INFO 33
- NX\_DISABLE\_TCP\_RX\_CHECKSUM 33
- NX\_DISABLE\_TCP\_TX\_CHECKSUM 33
- NX\_DISABLE\_UDP\_INFO 33, 35, 36, 37
- NX\_DRIVER\_DEFERRED\_PROCESSING 29, 374
- NX\_ENABLE\_IP\_STATIC\_ROUTING 32, 68
- nx\_icmp\_enable 78, 134
- nx\_icmp\_info\_get 78, 136
- nx\_icmp\_ping 138
- nx\_igmp\_enable 81, 140
- nx\_igmp\_info\_get 84, 142
- nx\_igmp\_loopback\_disable 144
- nx\_igmp\_loopback\_enable 146
- nx\_igmp\_multicast 363
- nx\_igmp\_multicast\_interface\_join 148
- nx\_igmp\_multicast\_join 81, 82
- nx\_igmp\_multicast\_leave 82, 152, 364
- NX\_INCLUDE\_USER\_DEFINE\_FILE 28
- NX\_INTERFACE 370
- nx\_interface\_additional\_link\_info 370
- nx\_interface\_link\_up 365
- nx\_ip\_address\_change\_notify 154
- nx\_ip\_address\_get 154, 156
- nx\_ip\_address\_set 158
- nx\_ip\_create 44, 45, 47, 62, 66, 69, 75, 354, 356
- nx\_ip\_delete 162, 357, 358
- NX\_IP\_DRIVER 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 368, 369, 370, 371
- nx\_ip\_driver\_command 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- nx\_ip\_driver\_direct\_command 366, 367, 368, 369, 370
- nx\_ip\_driver\_interface 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- nx\_ip\_driver\_link\_up 357

- `nx_ip_driver_packet` 360, 361, 362
- `nx_ip_driver_physical_address_lsw` 360, 361, 362, 363, 364
- `nx_ip_driver_physical_address_msw` 360, 361, 362, 363, 364
- `nx_ip_driver_ptr` 356, 357, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- `nx_ip_driver_return_ptr` 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- `nx_ip_driver_status` 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- `nx_ip_forwarding_enable` 170
- `nx_ip_fragment_disable` 172
- `nx_ip_fragment_enable` 174
- `nx_ip_gateway_address_set` 176
- `nx_ip_info_get` 67, 178
- `nx_ip_interface` 54
- `nx_ip_interface_address_get` 180
- `nx_ip_interface_address_set` 182
- `nx_ip_interface_attach` 47, 364, 365
- `nx_ip_interface_status_check` 43, 77, 365
- `NX_IP_PERIODIC_RATE` 32, 34, 35
- `nx_ip_raw_packet_disable` 192
- `nx_ip_raw_packet_enable` 194
- `nx_ip_raw_packet_enabled` 65
- `nx_ip_raw_packet_receive` 65, 196
- `nx_ip_raw_packet_send` 200
- `NX_IP_ROUTING_TABLE_SIZE` 32
- `nx_ip_socket_send` 87
- `nx_ip_static_route_add` 68
- `nx_ip_static_route_delete` 68, 204
- `nx_ip_status_check` 43, 77, 206, 366
- `NX_LINK_ARP_RESPONSE_SEND` 362
- `NX_LINK_ARP_SEND` 361
- `NX_LINK_DISABLE` 358
- `NX_LINK_ENABLE` 357
- `NX_LINK_GET_ALLOC_ERRORS` 369
- `NX_LINK_GET_DUPLEX_TYPE` 367
- `NX_LINK_GET_ERROR_COUNT` 368
- `NX_LINK_GET_RX_COUNT` 368
- `NX_LINK_GET_SPEED` 366
- `NX_LINK_GET_STATUS` 366
- `NX_LINK_GET_TX_COUNT` 369
- `NX_LINK_INITIALIZE` 356
- `NX_LINK_MULTICAST_JOIN` 363
- `NX_LINK_MULTICAST_LEAVE` 364, 365
- `NX_LINK_PACKET_BROADCAST` 360
- `NX_LINK_PACKET_SEND` 360
- `NX_LINK_RARP_SEND` 362
- `NX_LINK_USER_COMMAND` 370, 371
- `NX_LITTLE_ENDIAN` 29
- `NX_MAX_LISTEN_REQUESTS` 34
- `NX_MAX_MULTICAST_GROUPS` 31
- `NX_MAX_PHYSICAL_INTERFACES` 29
- `NX_NO_WAIT` 33
- `NX_PACKET` 54, 56, 88, 103
- `nx_packet_append_ptr` 55
- `nx_packet_copy` 210
- `nx_packet_data_append` 212
- `nx_packet_data_end` 54
- `nx_packet_data_extract_offset` 214
- `nx_packet_data_retrieve` 216
- `nx_packet_data_start` 54
- `nx_packet_last` 54
- `nx_packet_length` 54
- `nx_packet_length_get` 218
- `nx_packet_next` 54
- `nx_packet_pool_create` 54, 220
- `nx_packet_pool_delete` 222
- `nx_packet_pool_info_get` 57, 224
- `nx_packet_prepend_ptr` 55
- `nx_packet_queue_next` 372
- `nx_packet_release` 226
- `nx_packet_transmit_release` 52, 228, 372
- `NX_PHYSICAL_HEADER` 29
- `NX_PHYSICAL_TRAILER` 29, 30
- `nx_port.h` 11, 29
- `nx_rarp_disable` 230
- `nx_rarp_enable` 232
- `nx_rarp_info_get` 77, 234
- `NX_RARP_UPDATE_RATE` 76
- `NX_SUCCESS` 355
- `nx_system_initialize` 27, 42, 236
- `NX_TCP_ACK_EVERY_N_PACKETS` 34, 35
- `NX_TCP_ACK_TIMER_RATE` 34
- `nx_tcp_client_socket_bind` 96, 238
- `nx_tcp_client_socket_connect` 240

nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_port\_get 242  
 nx\_tcp\_client\_socket\_unbind 98, 244  
 nx\_tcp\_enable 94, 246  
 NX\_TCP\_ENABLE\_KEEPALIVE 34, 36  
 NX\_TCP\_ENABLE\_WINDOW\_SCALING 35  
 NX\_TCP\_FAST\_TIMER\_RATE 35  
 nx\_tcp\_free\_port\_find 248  
 NX\_TCP\_IMMEDIATE\_ACK 34, 35  
 nx\_tcp\_info\_get 105, 250  
 NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_INITIAL 35  
 NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_RETRIES 35  
 NX\_TCP\_KEEPALIVE\_RETRY 35  
 NX\_TCP\_MAXIMUM\_RETRIES 36  
 NX\_TCP\_MAXIMUM\_TX\_QUEUE 36  
 NX\_TCP\_RETRY\_SHIFT 36  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_accept 99, 101, 254  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_listen 99, 102, 258  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_relisten 99, 101, 262  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unaccept 100, 101, 266  
 nx\_tcp\_server\_socket\_unlisten 102, 270  
 NX\_TCP\_SOCKET 106  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_bytes\_available 274  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_create 94, 96, 99, 276  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_delete 98, 280  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_disconnect 96, 100, 101, 282, 286, 288  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_info\_get 105, 286  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_get 292  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_peer\_get 294  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_mss\_set 296  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_peer\_info\_get 298  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive 300  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_receive\_notify 104, 302  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_send 102, 304  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_state\_wait 308  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_transmit\_configure 310  
 nx\_tcp\_socket\_window\_update\_notify 314  
 NX\_TCP\_TRANSMIT\_TIMER\_RATE 36  
 nx\_tcp.h 34, 35, 36  
 nx\_udp\_enable 86, 316  
 nx\_udp\_free\_port\_find 318

nx\_udp\_info\_get 90, 320  
 nx\_udp\_packet\_info\_extract 322  
 NX\_UDP\_SOCKET 91  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_bind 324  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_bytes\_available 326  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_disable 87, 328  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_checksum\_enable 330  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_create 86, 332  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_delete 334  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_info\_get 90, 336  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_interface\_send 338  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_port\_get 338  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify 89  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive 43, 89, 342  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_receive\_notify 342  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_send 17, 87, 348  
 nx\_udp\_socket\_unbind 348  
 nx\_udp\_source\_extract 350  
 NX\_UNHANDLED\_COMMAND 371  
 nx\_user.h 28  
 nx.a (or nx.lib) 26, 27  
 nx.duo.lib 26, 27  
 nxd\_ip\_raw\_packet\_send 65  
 nxd\_tcp\_client\_socket\_connect 96  
 nxd\_udp\_socket\_extract 197  
 nxd\_udp\_socket\_send 43, 88

## O

optimal packet payload size 51  
 outgoing fragmentation 63  
 overwriting memory  
     IP helper thread 66

## P

packet allocation 51  
 packet broadcast 360  
 packet broadcast request 360  
 packet deallocation 51  
 packet destination IP address 47  
 packet header and packet pool layout 53  
 packet memory pool 52  
 packet memory pools 49

- packet pool control block
  - NX\_PACKET\_POOL 57
- packet pool control blocks 57
- packet pool creation 42
- packet pool information gathering
  - disabling 33
- packet pool memory area 52
- packet pools 51
- packet reception 45
- packet send processing 359
- packet size 56
- packet transmission 45, 52
- packet transmission completion 45
- packet\_ptr 374
- packet-receive processing 17
- packets requiring IP address resolution 63
- partitioning network aspect 20
- passing error and control information
  - between IP network members 77
- payload size 54, 56
- payload size for packets in pool 57
- performance advantages 16
- periodic RARP request 76
- physical address mapping in IPv4 81
- physical address mapping in IPv6 81
- physical Ethernet addresses 81
- physical layer header removed 373
- physical media 69
- physical packet header size 29
- picking up port number bound to UDP
  - socket 338
- Piconet™ architecture 16
- ping request 79
- ping response 79
- placing a raw packet on an IP instance 29
- placing packets with receive data on TCP
  - socket receive queue 104
- pointer to IP instance 356, 357, 358, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- pointer to the destination to place the allocation error count 370
- pointer to the destination to place the duplex type 367
- pointer to the destination to place the error count 368
- pointer to the destination to place the line speed 366
- pointer to the destination to place the receive packet count 368
- pointer to the destination to place the status 366
- pointer to the destination to place the transmit packet count 369
- Pointer to the packet to send 361
- pointer to the packet to send 360, 362
- pointer to the physical network interface 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371
- points to the end of the data currently in the packet payload area 55
- points to the location of where packet data is added 55
- pool capacity 56
- pool statistics and errors 56
- portability 11, 17
- pre-defined multicast addresses 81
- preemption 44
- prepend pointer 63, 64
- prevention of stalling network requests 43
- primary interface 47
- print debug information 28
- priority and stack size of internal IP thread 44
- processing needs 25
- processing packet and periodic requests 66
- processor isolation 20
- processors
  - DSP 16
  - RISC 16
- product distribution 25
- product release by name and the product major and minor version 37
- program execution overview 42
- protocol layering 50
- protocol using the IP datagram 62
- public domain network stacks 18

**Q**

queued client connection request packets  
102

**R**

RAM driver example 374  
 RARP enable 75  
 RARP information gathering  
   disabling 33  
 RARP reply 76  
 RARP reply messages 76  
 RARP reply packet 76  
 RARP request 76  
 RARP request packet format 76  
 RARP send 362  
 RARP send request 362  
 RARP statistics and errors 77  
 raw IP packet processing 65  
 raw IP packets 65  
 raw IP receive 65  
 raw IP send 65  
 readme\_netx\_duo\_generic.txt 24, 27, 28,  
   37  
 readme\_threadx.txt 25  
 ready-to-execute mode 44  
 real-time applications 19  
 real-time network software 19  
 receive functions 374  
 receive packet callback 89  
 receive packet callback function 104  
 receive packet dispatched 373  
 receive packet processing 374  
 received packet 43  
 receiving a raw IP packet 198  
 receiving data from a TCP socket 300  
 receiving datagram from UDP socket 340  
 recompiling NetX library with debug options  
   27  
 recompiling the NetX library 27  
 releasing a previously allocated packet 226  
 releasing a transmitted packet 228  
 reliable data path 49

re-listening for client connection on TCP  
   port 262  
 removing association between server  
   socket and server port 266  
 retransmit timeout period changes between  
   retries 36  
 retrieving data from packet 216  
 retrieving information  
   ARP activities 124  
   ICMP activities 136  
   IGMP activities 142  
 retrieving information about IP activities  
   178  
 retrieving information about packet pool  
   224  
 retrieving information about peer TCP  
   socket 298  
 retrieving information about RARP activities  
   234  
 retrieving information about TCP activities  
   250  
 retrieving information about TCP socket  
   activities 288  
 retrieving information about UDP activities  
   320  
 retrieving information about UDP socket  
   activities 336  
 retrieving interface IP address 180  
 retrieving network interface parameters  
   186  
 retrieving number of bytes available for  
   retrieval 274, 326  
 retrieving the IP address and network mask  
   156  
 Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (see  
   RARP) in IPv4 75  
 RFC  
   1112 80  
   768 84  
   793 91  
   826 69  
 RFC 791 57  
 RFC 903 75  
 RFCs Supported by NetX  
   RFC 1112 18



- RFC 2236 18
- RFC 768 18
- RFC 791 18
- RFC 792 18
- RFC 793 18
- RFC 826 18
- RFC 903 18
- RFCs supported by NetX
  - basic network protocols 18
- runtime image 16
- S**
  - scaling 16
  - seconds between retries of the keepalive timer 35
  - seconds of inactivity before the keepalive timer activates
    - defining 35
  - send packet request 360, 362
  - sending a raw IP packet 200
  - sending a UDP packet 84
  - sending and receiving of data 49
  - sending and receiving simple packets 49
  - sending and receiving UDP packets 86
  - sending data through a TCP socket 304
  - sending datagram through UDP socket 346
  - sending gratuitous ARP request 120
  - sending or receiving UDP data 87
  - sending ping request to specified IP address 138
  - sending raw IP packet out specified network interface 196
  - sending request to unmapped IP address 70
  - server listen requests
    - defining 34
  - service call data type 11
    - CHAR 11
    - UINT 11
    - ULONG 11
    - VOID 11
  - service call interface 11, 20
  - setting dynamic ARP entry 116
  - setting Gateway IP address 176
  - setting interface IP address and network mask 182
  - setting MSS of socket 296
  - setting the IP address and network mask 158
  - setup and data transfer phase of a connection 102
  - size of
    - NetX 16
  - socket receive function 89
  - socket receive queue 89
  - socket transmit queue 100
  - socket waiting for a connection 102
  - sockets 27
  - software maintenance 20
  - source code
    - ANSI C 17
    - ASCII format 24
  - specification of IP addresses 59
  - stack sizes 27
  - start of the physical payload area 54
  - static ARP mapping 70
  - static IPv4 routing 67
  - static routing table 67, 68
  - statistics 56
    - free packets in pool 57
    - invalid packet releases 57
    - pool empty allocation requests 57
    - pool empty allocation suspensions 57
    - TCP socket bytes received 105
    - TCP socket bytes sent 105
    - TCP socket checksum errors 105
    - TCP socket packet retransmits 105
    - TCP socket packets queued 105
    - TCP socket packets received 105
    - TCP socket packets sent 105
    - TCP socket receive window size 105
    - TCP socket state 105
    - TCP socket transmit queue depth 105
    - TCP socket transmit window size 105
    - total ARP aged entries 75
    - total ARP dynamic entries 75
    - total ARP invalid messages 75
    - total ARP requests received 75
    - total ARP requests sent 75
    - total ARP responses received 75

- total ARP responses sent 75
  - total ARP static entries 75
  - total ICMP checksum errors 78
  - total ICMP ping responses received 78
  - total ICMP ping threads suspended 78
  - total ICMP ping timeouts 78
  - total ICMP pings sent 78
  - total ICMP unhandled messages 78
  - total IGMP checksum errors 84
  - total IGMP current groups joined 84
  - total IGMP queries received 84
  - total IGMP reports sent 84
  - total IP bytes received 67
  - total IP bytes sent 67
  - total IP fragments received 67
  - total IP fragments sent 67
  - total IP invalid packets 67
  - total IP packets received 67
  - total IP packets sent 67
  - total IP receive checksum errors 67
  - total IP receive packets dropped 67
  - total IP send packets dropped 67
  - total packet allocations 57
  - total packets in pool 57
  - total RARP invalid messages 77
  - total RARP requests sent 77
  - total RARP responses received 77
  - total TCP bytes received 105
  - total TCP bytes sent 105
  - total TCP connections 105
  - total TCP connections dropped 105
  - total TCP disconnections 105
  - total TCP invalid packets 105
  - total TCP packet retransmits 105
  - total TCP packets received 105
  - total TCP packets sent 105
  - total TCP receive checksum errors 105
  - total TCP receive packets dropped 105
  - total UDP bytes received 90
  - total UDP bytes sent 90
  - total UDP invalid packets 90
  - total UDP packets received 90
  - total UDP packets sent 90
  - total UDP receive checksum Errors 90
  - total UDP receive packets dropped 90
  - UDP socket bytes received 90
  - UDP socket bytes sent 90
  - UDP socket checksum errors 90
  - UDP socket packets queued 90
  - UDP socket packets received 90
  - UDP socket packets sent 90
  - UDP socket receive packets dropped 90
  - status and control requests 45
  - status changes 45
  - stop listening on a server port 102
  - stream data transfer between two network members 91
  - suspend while attempting to receive a UDP packet 90
  - system configuration options 28
  - system initialization 42
  - system management 382
  - system tic division to calculate
    - fast TCP timer rate 35
    - timer rate for TCP transmit retry processing 36
    - timer rate for TCP-delayed ACK processing 34
- ## T
- target address space 52
  - target considerations 25
  - target RAM 25
  - target ROM 25
  - TCP 49
  - TCP checksum 94
  - TCP checksum logic 33
  - TCP client connection 96
  - TCP client disconnection 96
  - TCP disconnect protocol 98, 100
  - TCP enable 94
  - TCP for data transfer 95
  - TCP header 91
    - 16-bit destination port number 92
    - 16-bit source port number 92
    - 16-bit TCP checksum 94

- 16-bit urgent pointer 94
  - 16-bit window 93
  - 32-bit acknowledgement number 93
  - 32-bit sequence number 92
  - 4-bit header length 93
  - 6-bit code bits 93
  - TCP header control bits 93
  - TCP header format 91, 92
  - TCP immediate ACK response processing
    - enabling 35
  - TCP information gathering
    - disabling 33
  - TCP keepalive timer
    - enabling 34
  - TCP output queue 52
  - TCP packet queue processing 44
  - TCP packet receive 104
  - TCP packet retransmit 103
  - TCP packet send 102
  - TCP packets to receive before sending an ACK 34
  - TCP periodic processing 44
  - TCP receive notify 104
  - TCP receive packet processing 104
  - TCP retransmission timeout 45
  - TCP server connection 99
  - TCP server disconnection 100
  - TCP socket control block
    - NX\_TCP\_SOCKET 106
  - TCP socket create 91
  - TCP socket state machine 96
  - TCP socket statistics and errors 105
  - TCP sockets
    - number of in application 94
  - TCP transmit queue depth before suspended or rejected TCP send request 36
  - TCP window size 102
  - thread protection 25
  - thread stack and priority 66
  - thread stack requirements 25
  - thread suspension 56, 66, 80, 90, 105
  - ThreadX 11, 19, 42
    - distribution contents 25
  - ThreadX context switches 17
  - ThreadX mutex object 25
  - ThreadX periodic timers 45
  - ThreadX RTOS 43
  - ThreadX support 17
  - ThreadX timer 25
  - ThreadX\_Express\_Startup.pdf 25
  - time constraints on network applications 19
  - time-to-market improvement 20
  - total length of the IP datagram in bytes—
    - including the IP header 61
  - total number of physical network interfaces
    - on the device 29
  - Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) 91
  - transmit acknowledge processing 104
  - transmit retries allowed before connection
    - is broken 36
  - transmitting packets 359
  - transport layer 49
  - troubleshooting 27
  - tx\_api.h 25, 26
  - tx\_application\_define 27, 42, 43
  - tx\_port.h 11, 26
  - tx.a 26
  - tx.lib 26
  - type of ICMP message
    - ping request 78
    - ping response 80
  - type of service requested for this IP packet 61
- ## U
- UDP 49
  - UDP checksum 17, 86
  - UDP checksum calculation 43, 87
  - UDP data encapsulation 50
  - UDP enable 86
  - UDP Fast Path 87
  - UDP Fast Path Technology 17
  - UDP Fast Path technology 88
  - UDP header 85
    - 16-bit destination port number 85
    - 16-bit source port number 85
    - 16-bit UDP checksum 86
    - 16-bit UDP length 86

- UDP header format 85
- UDP information gathering
  - disabling 37
- UDP packet delivery to multiple network members 80
- UDP packet receive 89
- UDP packet reception 88
- UDP packet send 88
- UDP packet transmission 84
- UDP ports and binding 87
- UDP receive notify 89
- UDP receive packet processing 89
- UDP socket 17, 87
- UDP socket characteristics 91
- UDP socket checksum logic 87
- UDP socket control block
  - TX\_UDP\_SOCKET 91
- UDP socket create 89
- UDP socket receive queue 17
- UDP socket statistics and errors 90
- UDP socket's receive queue 89
- UDP utilization of IP protocol for sending and receiving packets 85
- unbinding a TCP client socket from a TCP port 244
- unbinding UDP socket from UDP port 348
- unicast addresses 59
- unimplemented commands 371
- unique 32-bit Internet address 58
- Unix host 24
- upper 13-bits of the fragment offset 62
- upper layer protocol services 47
- user command request 371
- user-defined pointer 371
- using deferred packet handling 374
- using NetX 26

## V

- version history 37

## W

- waiting for TCP socket to enter specific state 308

- window scaling option for TCP applications
  - enabling 34
- window size 102
- window size adjusted dynamically 102

## Z

- zero copy implementation 16



